

Learning Elastic Stack 7.0

Second Edition

Distributed search, analytics, and visualization using Elasticsearch,
Logstash, Beats, and Kibana



Packt

www.packt.com

Pranav Shukla and Sharath Kumar M N

Learning Elastic Stack 7.0
Second Edition

Distributed search, analytics, and visualization using Elasticsearch, Logstash, Beats, and Kibana

Pranav Shukla
Sharath Kumar M N

Packt

BIRMINGHAM - MUMBAI

Learning Elastic Stack 7.0 Second Edition

Copyright © 2019 Packt Publishing

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embedded in critical articles or reviews.

Every effort has been made in the preparation of this book to ensure the accuracy of the information presented. However, the information contained in this book is sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the authors, nor Packt Publishing or its dealers and distributors, will be held liable for any damages caused or alleged to have been caused directly or indirectly by this book.



mapt.io

Mapt is an online digital library that gives you full access to over 5,000 books and videos, as well as industry leading tools to help you plan your personal development and advance your career. For more information, please visit our website.

Why subscribe?

- Spend less time learning and more time coding with practical eBooks and Videos from over 4,000 industry professionals
- Improve your learning with Skill Plans built especially for you
- Get a free eBook or video every month
- Mapt is fully searchable
- Copy and paste, print, and bookmark content

Packt.com

Did you know that Packt offers eBook versions of every book published, with PDF and ePub files available? You can upgrade to the eBook version at www.packt.com and as a print book customer, you are entitled to a discount on the eBook copy. Get in touch with us at customerscare@packtpub.com for more details.

At www.packt.com, you can also read a collection of free technical articles, sign up for a range of free newsletters, and receive exclusive discounts and offers on Packt books and eBooks.

Contributors

About the authors

Pranav Shukla is the founder and CEO of Valens DataLabs, a technologist, husband, and father of two. He is a big data architect and software craftsman who uses JVM-based languages. Pranav has over 15 years experience in architecting enterprise applications for Fortune 500 companies and start-ups. His core expertise lies in building JVM-based, scalable, reactive, and data-driven applications using Java/Scala, the Hadoop ecosystem, Apache Spark, and NoSQL databases. Pranav founded Valens DataLabs with the vision of helping companies to leverage data to their competitive advantage. In his spare time, he enjoys reading books, playing musical instruments, and playing tennis.

I would like to thank my wife Kruti Shukla, our sons Sauhadra and Pratisht, my parents Dr Sharad Shukla and Varsha Shukla and my brother Vishal Shukla for inspiring me to write this book. I would like to thank Parth Mistry, Gopal Changhar, and Krishna Meet for their valuable feedback for the book. Special thanks to Umesh Kakkad, Alex Bolduc, Eddie Moojen, Wart Fransen, Vinod Patel, and Satyendra Bhatt for their help and support.

Sharath Kumar M N did his master's in computer science at the University of Texas, Dallas, USA. He is currently working as a senior principal architect at Broadcom. Prior to this, he was working as an Elasticsearch solutions architect at Oracle. He has given several tech talks at conferences such as Oracle Code events. Sharath is a certified trainer – **Elastic Certified Instructor** – one of the few technology experts in the world who has been certified by Elastic Inc. to deliver their official *from the creators of Elastic* training. He is also a data science and machine learning enthusiast. In his free time, he likes playing with his lovely niece, Monisha; nephew, Chirayu; and his pet, Milo.

I would like to thank my parents, Geetha and Nanjaiah; sister, Dr. Shilpa; brother-in-law, Dr. Sridhar; and my friends and colleagues - without their support, I wouldn't have been able to finish my part of this book in time. I would like to thank Ali Siddiqui and Venkata Karpuram for their inspirational leadership in AIOps at Broadcom. I would also like to thank Rajat Bhardwaj, Prasanth Kongati and Kiran Kadarla for their encouragement and support.

About the reviewer

Tan-Vinh Nguyen is a Switzerland-based Java, Elasticsearch, and Kafka enthusiast. He has more than 15 years experience in enterprise software development. As Elastic Certified Engineer, he works currently for mimacom ag in international Elasticsearch projects. He runs a blog named Cinhtau, where he evaluates technology, concepts, and best practices. His blog posts enable and empower application developers to accomplish their missions.

Marcelo Ochoa works for Dirección TICs of Facultad de Ciencias Exactas at Universidad Nacional del Centro de la Prov. de Buenos Aires and is the CTO at Scotas.com, a company that specializes in near real-time search solutions using Apache Solr and Oracle. He divides his time between ...

What this book covers

[Chapter 1](#), *Introducing Elastic Stack*, motivates you by introducing the core components of Elastic Stack, and the importance of the distributed, scalable search and analytics that Elastic Stack offers by means of use cases involving Elasticsearch. The chapter provides a brief introduction to all the core components, where they fit into the overall stack, and the purpose of each component. It concludes with instructions for downloading and installing Elasticsearch and Kibana to get started.

[Chapter 2](#), *Getting Started with Elasticsearch*, introduces the core concepts involved in Elasticsearch, which form the backbone of the Elastic Stack. Concepts such as indexes, types, nodes, and clusters are introduced. You will also be introduced to the REST API to perform essential operations, datatypes, and mappings.

[Chapter 3](#), *Searching – What is Relevant*, focuses on the search use case of Elasticsearch. It introduces the concepts of text analysis, tokenizers, analyzers, and the need for analysis and relevance-based searches. The chapter highlights an example use case to cover the relevance-based search topics.

[Chapter 4](#), *Analytics with Elasticsearch*, covers various types of aggregations by means of examples in order for you to acquire an in-depth understanding. This chapter covers very simple to complex aggregations to get powerful insights from terabytes of data. The chapter also covers the motivation behind using different types of aggregations.

[Chapter 5](#), *Analyzing Log Data*, establishes the foundation for the motivation behind Logstash, its architecture, and installing and configuring Logstash to set up basic data pipelines. Elastic 5 introduced ingest nodes, which can be used instead of a dedicated Logstash setup. This chapter also covers building pipelines using Elastic ingest nodes.

[Chapter 6](#), *Building Data Pipelines with Logstash*, builds on the fundamental knowledge of Logstash by means of transformations and aggregation-related filters. It covers how the rich set of filters brings Logstash closer to the other real-time and near real-time stream processing frameworks with zero coding. It introduces the Beats platform, along with FileBeat components, to transport log files from edge machines.

[Chapter 7](#), *Visualizing Data with Kibana*, covers how to effectively use Kibana to build beautiful dashboards for effective story telling regarding your data. It uses a sample dataset and provides step-by-step guidance on creating visualizations with just a few clicks.

[Chapter 8](#), *Elastic X-Pack*, covers how to add the extensions required for specific use cases. Elastic X-Pack is a set of extensions developed and maintained by Elastic Stack developers. These extensions are maintained with consistent

versioning.

[Chapter 9](#), *Running Elastic Stack in Production*, puts together a complete application for sensor data analytics with the concepts learned so far. It is entirely reliant on Elastic Stack components and close to zero programming. It shows how to model your data in Elasticsearch, how to build the data pipeline to ingest data, and then visualize it using Kibana. It also demonstrates how to effectively use X-Pack components to secure, monitor, and get alerts when certain conditions are met in this real-world example.

[Chapter 10](#), *Building a Sensor Data Analytics Application*, covers recommendations on how to deploy Elastic Stack to production. ElasticSearch can be deployed to solve a variety of use cases, such as product search, log analytics, and sensor data analytics. This chapter provides recommendations for taking your application to production. It provides guidelines on typical configurations that need to be looked at for different use cases. It also covers deployment in cloud-based hosted providers such as Elastic Cloud.

[Chapter 11](#), *Monitoring Server Infrastructure*, shows how you can use Elastic Stack to set up a real-time monitoring solution for your servers and applications that is built entirely using Elastic Stack. This can help prevent and minimize downtime while also improving the end user experience.

Packt is searching for authors like you

If you're interested in becoming an author for Packt, please visit authors.packtpub.com and apply today. We have worked with thousands of developers and tech professionals, just like you, to help them share their insight with the global tech community. You can make a general application, apply for a specific hot topic that we are recruiting an author for, or submit your own idea.

Table of Contents

[Title Page](#)

[Copyright and Credits](#)

[Learning Elastic Stack 7.0 Second Edition](#)

[About Packt](#)

[Why subscribe?](#)

[Packt.com](#)

[Contributors](#)

[About the authors](#)

[About the reviewer](#)

[Packt is searching for authors like you](#)

[Preface](#)

[Who this book is for](#)

[What this book covers](#)

[To get the most out of this book](#)

[Download the example code files](#)

[Download the color images](#)

[Conventions used](#)

[Get in touch](#)

[Reviews](#)

1. Section 1: Introduction to Elastic Stack and Elasticsearch

1. [Introducing Elastic Stack](#)

[What is Elasticsearch, and why use it?](#)

[Schemaless and document-oriented](#)

[Searching capability](#)

[Analytics](#)

Rich client library support and the REST API
Easy to operate and easy to scale
Near real-time capable
Lightning–fast
Fault-tolerant

Exploring the components of the Elastic Stack

Elasticsearch

Logstash

Beats

Kibana

X-Pack

Security

Monitoring

Reporting

Alerting

Graph

Machine learning

Elastic Cloud

Use cases of Elastic Stack

Log and security analytics

Product search

Metrics analytics

Web search and website search

Downloading and installing

Installing Elasticsearch

Installing Kibana

Summary

2. Getting Started with Elasticsearch

Using the Kibana Console UI
Core concepts of Elasticsearch

Indexes

[Types](#)
[Documents](#)
[Nodes](#)
[Clusters](#)
[Shards and replicas](#)
[Mappings and datatypes](#)

[Datatypes](#)

[Core datatypes](#)
[Complex datatypes](#)
[Other datatypes](#)

[Mappings](#)

[Creating an index with the name catalog](#)
[Defining the mappings for the type of product](#)

[Inverted indexes](#)

[CRUD operations](#)

[Index API](#)

[Indexing a document by providing an ID](#)
[Indexing a document without providing an ID](#)

[Get API](#)

[Update API](#)
[Delete API](#)

[Creating indexes and taking control of mapping](#)

[Creating an index](#)
[Creating type mapping in an existing index](#)
[Updating a mapping](#)

[REST API overview](#)

[Common API conventions](#)

[Formatting the JSON response](#)
[Dealing with multiple indexes](#)

Searching all documents in one index
Searching all documents in multiple indexes
Searching all the documents of a particu
lar type in all indexes

Summary

-
- 2. Section 2: Analytics and Visualizing Data
 - 3. Searching - What is Relevant

The basics of text analysis

Understanding Elasticsearch analyzers

Character filters
Tokenizer

Standard tokenizer

Token filters

Using built-in analyzers

Standard analyzer

Implementing autocomplete with a custom analyzer

Searching from structured data

Range query

Range query on numeric types
Range query with score boosting
Range query on dates

Exists query

Term query

Searching from the full text

Match query

Operator

Minimum should match

Fuzziness

Match phrase query

Multi match query

Querying multiple fields with defaults

Boosting one or more fields

With types of multi match queries

Writing compound queries

Constant score query

Bool query

Combining OR conditions

Combining AND and OR conditions

Adding NOT conditions

Modeling relationships

has_child query

has_parent query

parent_id query

Summary

4. Analytics with Elasticsearch

The basics of aggregations

Bucket aggregations

Metric aggregations

Matrix aggregations

Pipeline aggregations

Preparing data for analysis

Understanding the structure of the data

Loading the data using Logstash

Metric aggregations

Sum, average, min, and max aggregations

Sum aggregation
Average aggregation
Min aggregation
Max aggregation

Stats and extended stats aggregations

Stats aggregation
Extended stats aggregation

Cardinality aggregation

Bucket aggregations

Bucketing on string data

Terms aggregation

Bucketing on numerical data

Histogram aggregation

Range aggregation

Aggregations on filtered data

Nesting aggregations
Bucketing on custom conditions

Filter aggregation

Filters aggregation

Bucketing on date/time data

Date Histogram aggregation

Creating buckets across time periods

Using a different time zone

Computing other metrics within sliced time intervals

ls

Focusing on a specific day and changing intervals

Bucketing on geospatial data

Geodistance aggregation

GeoHash grid aggregation

[Pipeline aggregations](#)

[Calculating the cumulative sum of usage over time](#)

[Summary](#)

5. [Analyzing Log Data](#)

[Log analysis challenges](#)

[Using Logstash](#)

[Installation and configuration](#)

[Prerequisites](#)

[Downloading and installing Logstash](#)

[Installing on Windows](#)

[Installing on Linux](#)

[Running Logstash](#)

[The Logstash architecture](#)

[Overview of Logstash plugins](#)

[Installing or updating plugins](#)

[Input plugins](#)

[Output plugins](#)

[Filter plugins](#)

[Codec plugins](#)

[Exploring plugins](#)

[Exploring input plugins](#)

[File](#)

[Beats](#)

[JDBC](#)

[IMAP](#)

[Output plugins](#)

[Elasticsearch](#)

[CSV](#)

Kafka
PagerDuty

Codec plugins

JSON
Rubydebug
Multiline

Filter plugins

Ingest node

Defining a pipeline
Ingest APIs

Put pipeline API
Get pipeline API
Delete pipeline API
Simulate pipeline API

Summary

6. Building Data Pipelines with Logstash

Parsing and enriching logs
using Logstash

Filter plugins

CSV filter
Mutate filter
Grok filter
Date filter
Geoip filter
Useragent filter

Introducing Beats

Beats by Elastic.co

Filebeat
Metricbeat
Packetbeat
Heartbeat

[Winlogbeat](#)
[Auditbeat](#)
[Journalbeat](#)
[Functionbeat](#)

[Community Beats](#)
[Logstash versus Beats](#)

[Filebeat](#)

[Downloading and installing Filebeat](#)

[Installing on Windows](#)
[Installing on Linux](#)

[Architecture](#)
[Configuring Filebeat](#)

[Filebeat inputs](#)
[Filebeat general/global options](#)
[Output configuration](#)
[Logging](#)
[Filebeat modules](#)

[Summary](#)

7. [Visualizing Data with Kibana](#)

[Downloading and installing Kibana](#)

[Installing on Windows](#)
[Installing on Linux](#)
[Configuring Kibana](#)

[Preparing data](#)
[Kibana UI](#)

[User interaction](#)
[Configuring the index pattern](#)
[Discover](#)

[Elasticsearch query string/Lucene query](#)
[Elasticsearch DSL query](#)

[KQL](#)

[Visualize](#)

[Kibana aggregations](#)

[Bucket aggregations](#)

[Metric](#)

[Creating a visualization](#)

[Visualization types](#)

[Line, area, and bar charts](#)

[Data tables](#)

[Markdown widgets](#)

[Metrics](#)

[Goals](#)

[Gauges](#)

[Pie charts](#)

[Co-ordinate maps](#)

[Region maps](#)

[Tag clouds](#)

[Visualizations in action](#)

[Response codes over time](#)

[Top 10 requested URLs](#)

[Bandwidth usage of the top five countries over time](#)

[Web traffic originating from different countries](#)

[Most used user agent](#)

[Dashboards](#)

[Creating a dashboard](#)

[Saving the dashboard](#)

[Cloning the dashboard](#)

[Sharing the dashboard](#)

[Timelion](#)

[Timelion](#)

[Timelion expressions](#)

[Using plugins](#)

[Installing plugins](#)

[Removing plugins](#)

[Summary](#)

[3. Section 3: Elastic Stack Extensions](#)

[8. Elastic X-Pack](#)

[Installing Elasticsearch and Kibana with X-Pack](#)

[Installation](#)

[Activating X-Pack trial account](#)

[Generating passwords for default users](#)

[Configuring X-Pack](#)

[Securing Elasticsearch and Kibana](#)

[User authentication](#)

[User authorization](#)

[Security in action](#)

[Creating a new user](#)

[Deleting a user](#)

[Changing the password](#)

[Creating a new role](#)

[Deleting or editing a role](#)

[Document-level security or field-level security](#)

[X-Pack security APIs](#)

[User Management APIs](#)

[Role Management APIs](#)

[Monitoring Elasticsearch](#)

[Monitoring UI](#)

[Elasticsearch metrics](#)

[Overview tab](#)

[Nodes tab](#)
[The Indices tab](#)

[Alerting](#)

[Anatomy of a watch](#)
[Alerting in action](#)

[Creating a new alert](#)

[Threshold Alert](#)
[Advanced Watch](#)

[Deleting/deactivating/editing a watch](#)

[Summary](#)

4. [Section 4: Production and Server Infrastructure](#)

9. [Running Elastic Stack in Production](#)

[Hosting Elastic Stack on a managed cloud](#)

[Getting up and running on Elastic Cloud](#)
[Using Kibana](#)
[Overriding configuration](#)
[Recovering from a snapshot](#)

[Hosting Elastic Stack on your own](#)

[Selecting hardware](#)
[Selecting an operating system](#)
[Configuring Elasticsearch nodes](#)

[JVM heap size](#)
[Disable swapping](#)
[File descriptors](#)
[Thread pools and garbage collector](#)

[Managing and monitoring Elasticsearch](#)
[Running in Docker containers](#)
[Special considerations while deploying to a cloud](#)

[Choosing instance type](#)

Changing default ports; do not expose ports!

Proxy requests

Binding HTTP to local addresses

Installing EC2 discovery plugin

Installing the S3 repository plugin

Setting up periodic snapshots

Backing up and restoring

Setting up a repository for snapshots

Shared filesystem

Cloud or distributed filesystems

Taking snapshots

Restoring a specific snapshot

Setting up index aliases

Understanding index aliases

How index aliases can help

Setting up index templates

Defining an index template

Creating indexes on the fly

Modeling time series data

Scaling the index with unpredictable volume over time

Unit of parallelism in Elasticsearch

The effect of the number of shards on the relevance score

The effect of the number of shards on the accuracy of aggregations

Changing the mapping over time

New fields get added

Existing fields get removed

Automatically deleting older documents

How index-per-timeframe solves these issues

Scaling with index-per-timeframe

Changing the mapping over time

Automatically deleting older documents

Summary

10. Building a Sensor Data Analytics Application

Introduction to the application

Understanding the sensor-generated data

Understanding the sensor metadata

Understanding the final stored data

Modeling data in Elasticsearch

Defining an index template

Understanding the mapping

Setting up the metadata database

Building the Logstash data pipeline

Accepting JSON requests over the web

Enriching the JSON with the metadata we have in the MySQL database

The jdbc_streaming plugin

The mutate plugin

Moving the looked-up fields that are under \n lookupResult directly in JSON

Combining the latitude and longitude fields under \n lookupResult as a location field

Removing the unnecessary fields

Store the resulting documents in Elasticsearch

Sending data to Logstash over HTTP

Visualizing the data in Kibana

Setting up an index pattern in Kibana

Building visualizations

How does the average temperature change over time?
How does the average humidity change over time?
How do temperature and humidity change at each location over time?
Can I visualize temperature and humidity over a map?
How are the sensors distributed across departments?

Creating a dashboard

Summary

11. Monitoring Server Infrastructure

Metricbeat

Downloading and installing Metricbeat

Installing on Windows

Installing on Linux

Architecture

Event structure

Configuring Metricbeat

Module configuration

Enabling module configs in the modules.d directory

Enabling module configs in the metricbeat.yml file

General settings

Output configuration

Logging

Capturing system metrics

Running Metricbeat with the system module

Specifying aliases

Visualizing system metrics using Kibana

Deployment architecture

Summary

Other Books You May Enjoy

Leave a review - let other readers know what you think

Preface

The Elastic Stack is a powerful combination of tools for techniques including distributed searching, analytics, logging, and the visualization of data. Elastic Stack 7.0 encompasses new features and capabilities that will enable you to find unique insights into analytics using these techniques. This book will give you a fundamental understanding of what the stack is all about, and help you use it efficiently to build powerful real-time data processing applications.

The first few sections of the book will help you to understand how to set up the stack by installing tools and exploring their basic configurations. You'll then get up to speed with using Elasticsearch for distributed searching and analytics, Logstash for logging, and Kibana ...

Who this book is for

This book is for entry-level data professionals, software engineers, e-commerce developers, and full-stack developers who want to learn about Elastic Stack and how the real-time processing and search engine works for business analytics and enterprise search applications.

To get the most out of this book

Previous experience with Elastic Stack is not required. However, some knowledge of data warehousing and database concepts will be beneficial.

Download the example code files

You can download the example code files for this book from your account at www.packt.com. If you purchased this book elsewhere, you can visit www.packt.com/support and register to have the files emailed directly to you.

You can download the code files by following these steps:

1. Log in or register at www.packt.com.
2. Select the SUPPORT tab.
3. Click on Code Downloads & Errata.
4. Enter the name of the book in the Search box and follow the onscreen instructions.

Once the file is downloaded, please make sure that you unzip or extract the folder using the latest version of:

- WinRAR/7-Zip for Windows
- Zipeg/iZip/UnRarX for Mac
- 7-Zip/PeaZip for Linux

The code bundle for the book is also hosted on GitHub at <https://github.com/PacktPublishing/Learning-Elastic-Stack-7.0-Second-Edition>. In case there's an update to the code, it will be updated on the existing GitHub repository.

We also have other code bundles from our rich catalog of books and videos available at <https://github.com/PacktPublishing/>. Check them out!

Download the color images

We also provide a PDF file that has color images of the screenshots/diagrams used in this book. You can download it here: http://www.packtpub.com/sites/default/files/downloads/9781789954395_ColorImages.pdf.

Conventions used

There are a number of text conventions used throughout this book.

CodeInText: Indicates code words in text, database table names, folder names, filenames, file extensions, pathnames, dummy URLs, user input, and Twitter handles. Here is an example: "Mount the downloaded `WebStorm-10*.dmg` disk image file as another disk in your system."

A block of code is set as follows:

```
POST _analyze
{
  "tokenizer": "standard",
  "text": "Tokenizer breaks characters into tokens!"
}
```

When we wish to draw your attention to a particular part of a code block, the relevant lines or items are set in bold:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "term": {
      "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
    }
  }
}
```

Any command-line input or output is written as follows:

```
$> tar -xzf filebeat-7.0.0-linux-x86_64.tar.gz
$> cd filebeat
```

Bold: Indicates a new term, an important word, or words that you see on screen. For example, words in menus or dialog boxes appear in the text like this. Here is an example: "Click on the **Management** icon on the left-hand menu and then click on **License Management**."

Warnings or important notes appear like this.

Tips and tricks appear like this.

Get in touch

Feedback from our readers is always welcome.

General feedback: If you have questions about any aspect of this book, mention the book title in the subject of your message and email us at customercare@packtpub.com.

Errata: Although we have taken every care to ensure the accuracy of our content, mistakes do happen. If you have found a mistake in this book, we would be grateful if you would report this to us. Please visit www.packt.com/submit-er-rata, selecting your book, clicking on the Errata Submission Form link, and entering the details.

Piracy: If you come across any illegal copies of our works in any form on the internet, we would be grateful if you would provide us with the location address or website name. Please contact us ...

Reviews

Please leave a review. Once you have read and used this book, why not leave a review on the site that you purchased it from? Potential readers can then see and use your unbiased opinion to make purchase decisions, we at Packt can understand what you think about our products, and our authors can see your feedback on their book. Thank you!

For more information about Packt, please visit packt.com.

Section 1: Introduction to Elastic Stack and Elasticsearch

This section covers the basics of Elasticsearch and Elastic Stack. It highlights the importance of distributed and scalable search and analytics that Elastic Stack offers. It will include concepts such as indexes, types, nodes, and clusters, and provide insights into the REST API, which can be used to perform essential operations such as datatypes and mappings.

This section includes the following chapters:

- [Chapter 1, Introducing Elastic Stack](#)
- [Chapter 2, Getting Started with Elasticsearch](#)

Introducing Elastic Stack

The emergence of the web, mobiles, social networks, blogs, and photo sharing has created a massive amount of data in recent years. These new data sources create information that cannot be handled using traditional data storage technology, typically relational databases. As an application developer or business intelligence developer, your job is to fulfill the search and analytics needs of the application.

A number of data stores, capable of big data scale, have emerged in the last few years. These include Hadoop ecosystem projects, several NoSQL databases, and search and analytics engines such as Elasticsearch.

The Elastic Stack is a rich ecosystem of components serving as a full search and analytics stack. The main components of the Elastic Stack are Kibana, Logstash, Beats, X-Pack, and Elasticsearch.

Elasticsearch is at the heart of the Elastic Stack, providing storage, search, and analytical capabilities. Kibana, also referred to as a **window** into the Elastic Stack, is a user interface for the Elastic Stack with great visualization capabilities. Logstash and Beats help get the data into the Elastic Stack. X-Pack provides powerful features including monitoring, alerting, security, graph, and machine learning to make your system production-ready. Since Elasticsearch is at the heart of the Elastic Stack, we will cover the stack inside-out, starting from the heart and moving on to the surrounding components.

In this chapter, we will cover the following topics:

- What is Elasticsearch, and why use it?
- A brief history of Elasticsearch and Apache Lucene
- Elastic Stack components
- Use cases of Elastic Stack

We will look at what Elasticsearch is and why you should consider it as your data store. Once you know the key strengths of Elasticsearch, we will look at the history of Elasticsearch and its underlying technology, Apache Lucene. We will then look at some use cases of the Elastic Stack, and provide an overview of the Elastic Stack's components.

What is Elasticsearch, and why use it?

Since you are reading this book, you probably already know what Elasticsearch is. For the sake of completeness, let's define Elasticsearch:

Elasticsearch is a real-time, distributed search and analytics engine that is horizontally scalable and capable of solving a wide variety of use cases. At the heart of the Elastic Stack, it centrally stores your data so you can discover the expected and uncover the unexpected.

Elasticsearch is at the core of the Elastic Stack, playing the central role of a search and analytics engine. Elasticsearch is built on a radically different technology, Apache Lucene. This fundamentally different technology in Elasticsearch sets it apart from traditional relational databases ...

Schemaless and document-oriented

Elasticsearch does not impose a strict structure on your data; you can store any JSON documents. JSON documents are first-class citizens in Elasticsearch as opposed to rows and columns in a relational database. A document is roughly equivalent to a record in a relational database table. Traditional relational databases require a schema to be defined beforehand to specify a fixed set of columns and their data types and sizes. Often the nature of data is very dynamic, requiring support for new or dynamic columns. JSON documents naturally support this type of data. For example, take a look at the following document:

```
{  
  "name": "John Smith",  
  "address": "121 John Street, NY, 10010",  
  "age": 40  
}
```

This document may represent a customer's record. Here the record has the `name`, `address`, and `age` fields of the customer. Another record may look like the following:

```
{  
  "name": "John Doe",  
  "age": 38,  
  "email": "john.doe@company.org"  
}
```

Note that the second customer doesn't have the `address` field but, instead, has an `email` address. In fact, other customer documents may have completely different sets of fields. This provides a tremendous amount of flexibility in terms of what can be stored.

Searching capability

The core strength of Elasticsearch lies in its text-processing capabilities. Elasticsearch is great at searching, especially full-text searches. Let's understand what a full-text search is:

Full-text search means searching through all the terms of all the documents available in the database. This requires the entire contents of all documents to be parsed and stored beforehand. When you hear full-text search, think of Google Search. You can enter any search term and Google looks through all of the web pages on the internet to find the best-matching web pages. This is quite different from simple SQL queries run against columns of type `string` in relational databases. Normal SQL queries with a `WHERE` clause and an equals (...

Analytics

Apart from searching, the second most important **functional** strength of Elasticsearch is analytics. Yes, what was originally known as just a full-text search engine is now used as an analytics engine in a variety of use cases. Many organizations are running analytics solutions powered by Elasticsearch in production.

Conducting a search is like zooming in and finding a needle in a haystack, that is, locating precisely what is needed within huge amounts of data. Analytics is exactly the opposite of a search; it is about zooming out and taking a look at the bigger picture. For example, you may want to know how many visitors on your website are from the United States as opposed to every other country, or you may want to know how many of your website's visitors use macOS, Windows, or Linux.

Elasticsearch supports a wide variety of aggregations for analytics. Elasticsearch aggregations are quite powerful and can be applied to various data types. We will take a look at the analytics capabilities of Elasticsearch in [chapter 4, Analytics with Elasticsearch](#).

Rich client library support and the REST API

Elasticsearch has very rich client library support to make it accessible to many programming languages. There are client libraries available for Java, C#, Python, JavaScript, PHP, Perl, Ruby, and many more. Apart from the official client libraries, there are community-driven libraries for 20 plus programming languages.

Additionally, Elasticsearch has a very rich **REST (Representational State Transfer)** API, which works on the HTTP protocol. The REST API is very well documented and quite comprehensive, making all operations available over HTTP.

All this means that Elasticsearch is very easy to integrate into any application to fulfill your search and analytics needs.

Easy to operate and easy to scale

Elasticsearch can run on a single node and easily scale out to hundreds of nodes. It is very easy to start a single node instance of Elasticsearch; it works out of the box without any configuration changes and scales to hundreds of nodes.

Horizontal scalability is the ability to scale a system horizontally by starting up multiple instances of the same type rather than making one instance more and more powerful. **Vertical scaling** is about upgrading a single instance by adding more processing power (by increasing the number of CPUs or CPU cores), memory, or storage capacity. There is a practical limit to how much a system can be scaled vertically due to cost and other factors, such as the availability of higher-end hardware.

Unlike most traditional databases that only allow vertical scaling, Elasticsearch can be scaled horizontally. It can run on tens or hundreds of commodity nodes instead of one extremely expensive server. Adding a node to an existing Elasticsearch cluster is as easy as starting up a new node in the same network, with virtually no extra configuration. The client application doesn't need to change, whether it is running against a single-node or a hundred-node cluster.

Near real-time capable

Typically, data is available for queries within a second after being indexed (saved). Not all big data storage systems are real-time capable. Elasticsearch allows you to index thousands to hundreds of thousands of documents per second and makes them available for searching almost immediately.

Lightning-fast

Elasticsearch uses Apache Lucene as its underlying technology. By default, Elasticsearch indexes all the fields of your documents. This is extremely invaluable as you can query or search by any field in your records. You will never be in a situation in which you think, *If only I had chosen to create an index on this field*. Elasticsearch contributors have leveraged Apache Lucene to its best advantage, and there are other optimizations that make it lightning-fast.

Fault-tolerant

Elasticsearch clusters can keep running even when there are hardware failures such as node failure and network failure. In the case of node failure, it replicates all the data on the failed node to another node in the cluster. In the case of network failure, Elasticsearch seamlessly elects master replicas to keep the cluster running. Whether it is a case of node or network failure, you can rest assured that your data is safe.

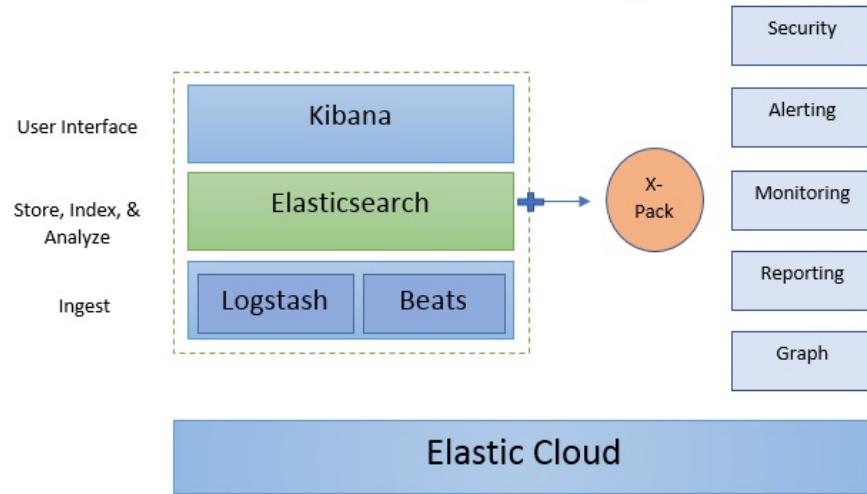
Now that you know when and why Elasticsearch could be a great choice, let's take a high-level view of the ecosystem – the Elastic Stack.

Exploring the components of the Elastic Stack

The Elastic Stack components are shown in the following diagram. It is not necessary to include all of them in your solution. Some components are general-purpose and can be used outside the Elastic Stack without using any other components.

Let's look at the purpose of each component and how they fit into the stack:

Elastic Stack: Real Time Search & Analytics at Scale



Elasticsearch

Elasticsearch is at the heart of the Elastic Stack. It stores all your data and provides search and analytic capabilities in a scalable way. We have already looked at the strengths of Elasticsearch and why you would want to use it. Elasticsearch can be used without using any other components to power your application in terms of search and analytics. We will cover Elasticsearch in great detail in [chapter 2, Getting Started with Elasticsearch](#), [chapter 3, Searching-What is Relevant](#), and [chapter 4, Analytics with Elasticsearch](#).

Logstash

Logstash helps centralize event data such as logs, metrics, or any other data in any format. It can perform a number of transformations before sending it to a stash of your choice. It is a key component of the Elastic Stack, used to centralize the collection and transformation processes in your data pipeline.

Logstash is a server-side component. Its role is to centralize the collection of data from a wide number of input sources in a scalable way, and transform and send the data to an output of your choice. Typically, the output is sent to Elasticsearch, but Logstash is capable of sending it to a wide variety of outputs. Logstash has a plugin-based, extensible architecture. It supports three types of plugin: input plugins, filter plugins, and output plugins. Logstash has a collection of 200+ supported plugins and the count is ever increasing.

Logstash is an excellent general-purpose data flow engine that helps in building real-time, scalable data pipelines.

Beats

Beats is a platform of open source lightweight data shippers. Its role is complementary to Logstash. Logstash is a server-side component, whereas Beats has a role on the client side. Beats consists of a core library, `libbeat`, which provides an API for shipping data from the source, configuring the input options, and implementing logging. Beats is installed on machines that are not part of server-side components such as Elasticsearch, Logstash, or Kibana. These agents reside on non-cluster nodes, which are sometimes called **edge nodes**.

Many Beat components have already been built by the Elastic team and the open source community. The Elastic team has built Beats including Packetbeat, Filebeat, Metricbeat, Winlogbeat, Audiobeat, and Heartbeat. ...

Kibana

Kibana is the visualization tool for the Elastic Stack, and can help you gain powerful insights about your data in Elasticsearch. It is often called a window into the Elastic Stack. It offers many visualizations including histograms, maps, line charts, time series, and more. You can build visualizations with just a few clicks and interactively explore data. It lets you build beautiful dashboards by combining different visualizations, sharing with others, and exporting high-quality reports.

Kibana also has management and development tools. You can manage settings and configure X-Pack security features for Elastic Stack. Kibana also has development tools that enable developers to build and test REST API requests.

We will explore Kibana in [chapter 7, Visualizing Data with Kibana](#).

X-Pack

X-Pack adds essential features to make the Elastic Stack production-ready. It adds **security, monitoring, alerting, reporting, graph, and machine learning capabilities** to the Elastic Stack.

Security

The security plugin within X-Pack adds authentication and authorization capabilities to Elasticsearch and Kibana so that only authorized people can access data, and they can only see what they are allowed to. The security plugin works across components seamlessly, securing access to Elasticsearch and Kibana.

The security extension also lets you configure fields and document-level security with the licensed version.

Monitoring

You can monitor your Elastic Stack components so that there is no downtime. The monitoring component in X-Pack lets you monitor your Elasticsearch clusters and Kibana.

You can monitor clusters, nodes, and index-level metrics. The monitoring plugin maintains a history of performance so you can compare current metrics with past metrics. It also has a capacity planning feature.

Reporting

The reporting plugin within X-Pack allows for generating printable, high-quality reports from Kibana visualizations. The reports can be scheduled to run periodically or on a per-event basis.

Alerting

X-Pack has sophisticated alerting capabilities that can alert you in multiple possible ways when certain conditions are met. It gives tremendous flexibility in terms of when, how, and who to alert.

You may be interested in detecting security breaches, such as when someone has five login failures within an hour from different locations or finding out when your product is trending on social media. You can use the full power of Elasticsearch queries to check when complex conditions are met.

Alerting provides a wide variety of options in terms of how alerts are sent. It can send alerts via email, Slack, Hipchat, and PagerDuty.

Graph

Graph lets you explore relationships in your data. Data in Elasticsearch is generally perceived as a flat list of entities without connections to other entities. This relationship opens up the possibility of new use cases. Graph can surface relationships among entities that share common properties such as people, places, products, or preferences.

Graph consists of the Graph API and a UI within Kibana, that let you explore this relationship. Under the hood, it leverages distributed querying, indexing at scale, and the relevance capabilities of Elasticsearch.

Machine learning

X-Pack has a machine learning module, which is for learning from patterns within data. Machine learning is a vast field that includes supervised learning, unsupervised learning, reinforcement learning, and other specialized areas such as deep learning. The machine learning module within X-Pack is limited to anomaly detection in time series data, which falls under the unsupervised learning branch of machine learning.

We will look at some X-Pack components in [chapter 8](#), *Elastic X-Pack*.

Elastic Cloud

Elastic Cloud is the cloud-based, hosted, and managed setup of the Elastic Stack components. The service is provided by Elastic (<https://www.elastic.co/>), which is behind the development of Elasticsearch and other Elastic Stack components. All Elastic Stack components are open source except X-Pack (and Elastic Cloud). Elastic, the company, provides services for Elastic Stack components including training, development, support, and cloud hosting.

Apart from Elastic Cloud, other hosted solutions are available for Elasticsearch, including one from **Amazon Web Services (AWS)**. The advantage of Elastic Cloud is that it is developed and maintained by the original creators of Elasticsearch and other Elastic Stack components.

Use cases of Elastic Stack

Elastic Stack components have a variety of practical use cases, and new use cases are emerging as more plugins are added to existing components. As mentioned earlier, you may use a subset of the components for your use case. The following list of example use cases is by no means exhaustive, but highlights some of the most common ones:

- Log and security analytics
- Product search
- Metrics analytics
- Web searches and website searches

Let's look at each use case.

Log and security analytics

The Elasticsearch, Logstash, and Kibana trio was, previously, very popular as a stack. The presence of Elasticsearch, Logstash, and Kibana (also known as **ELK**) makes the Elastic Stack an excellent stack for aggregating and analyzing logs in a central place.

Application support teams face a great challenge in administering and managing large numbers of applications deployed across tens or hundreds of servers. The application infrastructure could have the following components:

- Web servers
- Application servers
- Database servers
- Message brokers

Typically, enterprise applications have all, or most, of the types of servers described earlier, and there are multiple instances of each server. In the event of an error or production issue, the support team has to log in to individual servers and look at the errors. It is quite inefficient to log in to individual servers and look at the raw log files. The Elastic Stack provides a complete toolset to collect, centralize, analyze, visualize, alert, and report errors as they occur. Each component can be used to solve this problem as follows:

- The Beats framework, Filebeat in particular, can run as a lightweight agent to collect and forward logs.
- Logstash can centralize events received from Beats, and parse and transform each log entry before sending it to the Elasticsearch cluster.
- Elasticsearch indexes logs. It enables both search and analytics on the parsed logs.
- Kibana then lets you create visualizations based on errors, warnings, and other information logs. It lets you create dashboards on which you can centrally monitor events as they occur, in real time.
- With X-Pack, you can secure the solution, configure alerts, get reports, and analyze relationships in data.

As you can see, you can get a complete log aggregation and monitoring solution using Elastic Stack.

A security analytics solution would be very similar to this; the logs and events being fed into the system would pertain to firewalls, switches, and other key network elements.

Product search

A product search involves searching for the most relevant product from thousands or tens of thousands of products and presenting the most relevant products at the top of the list before other, less relevant, products. You can directly relate this problem to e-commerce websites, which sell huge numbers of products sold by many vendors or resellers.

Elasticsearch's full-text and relevance search capabilities can find the best-matching results. Presenting the best matches on the first page has great value as it increases the chances of the customer actually buying the product.

Imagine a customer searching for the iPhone 7, and the results on the first page showing different cases, chargers, and accessories for previous iPhone ...

Metrics analytics

Elastic Stack has excellent analytics capabilities, thanks to the rich Aggregations API in Elasticsearch. This makes it a perfect tool for analyzing data with lots of metrics. Metric data consists of numeric values as opposed to unstructured text such as documents and web pages. Some examples are data generated by sensors, **Internet of Things (IoT)** devices, metrics generated by mobile devices, servers, virtual machines, network routers, switches, and so on. The list is endless.

Metric data is, typically, also time series; that is, values or measures are recorded over a period of time. Metrics that are recorded are usually related to some entity. For example, a temperature reading (which is a metric) is recorded for a particular sensor device with a certain identifier. The type, name of the building, department, floor, and so on are the dimensions associated with the metric. The dimensions may also include the location of the sensor device, that is, the longitude and latitude.

Elasticsearch and Kibana allow for slicing and dicing metric data along different dimensions to provide a deep insight into your data. Elasticsearch is very powerful at handling time series and geospatial data, which means you can plot your metrics on line charts and area charts aggregating millions of metrics. You can also conduct geospatial analysis on a map.

We will build a metrics analytics application using the Elastic Stack in [chapter 9](#), *Building a Sensor Data Analytics Application*.

Web search and website search

Elasticsearch can serve as a search engine for your website and perform a Google-like search across the entire content of your site. GitHub, Wikipedia, and many other platforms power their searches using Elasticsearch.

Elasticsearch can be leveraged to build content aggregation platforms. *What is a content aggregator or a content aggregation platform?* Content aggregators scrape/crawl multiple websites, index the web pages, and provide a search functionality on the underlying content. This is a powerful way to build domain-specific, aggregated platforms.

Apache Nutch, an open source, large-scale web crawler, was created by **Doug Cutting**, the original creator of Apache Lucene. Apache Nutch crawls the web, parses ...

Downloading and installing

Now that we have enough motivation and reasons to learn about Elasticsearch and the Elastic Stack, let's start by downloading and installing the key components. Firstly, we will download and install Elasticsearch and Kibana. We will install the other components as we need them on the course of our journey. We also need Kibana because, apart from visualizations, it also has a UI for developer tools and for interacting with Elasticsearch.

Starting from Elastic Stack 5.x, all Elastic Stack components are now released together; they share the same version and are tested for compatibility with each other. This is also true for Elastic Stack 6.x components.

At the time of writing, the current version of Elastic Stack is 7.0.0. We will use this version for all components.

Installing Elasticsearch

Elasticsearch can be downloaded as a ZIP, TAR, DEB, or RPM package. If you are on Ubuntu, Red Hat, or CentOS Linux, it can be directly installed using `apt` or `yum`.

We will use the ZIP format as it is the least intrusive and the easiest for development purposes:

1. Go to <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/elasticsearch> and download the ZIP distribution. You can also download an older version if you are looking for an exact version.
2. Extract the file and change your directory to the top-level extracted folder. Run `bin/elasticsearch` OR `bin/elasticsearch.bat`.
3. Run `curl http://localhost:9200` or open the URL in your favorite browser.

You should see an output like this:

Congratulations! You have just set up a single-node Elasticsearch ...

Installing Kibana

Kibana is also available in a variety of packaging formats such as ZIP, TAR.GZ, RMP, and DEB for 32-bit and 64-bit architecture machines:

1. Go to <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/kibana> and download the ZIP or TAR.GZ distribution for the platform that you are on.
2. Extract the file and change your directory to the top-level extracted folder. Run `bin/kibana` OR `bin/kibana.bat`.
3. Open `http://localhost:5601` in your favorite browser.

Congratulations! You have a working setup of Elasticsearch and Kibana.

Summary

In this chapter, we started by understanding the motivations of various search and analytics technologies other than relational databases and NoSQL stores. We looked at the strengths of Elasticsearch, which is at the heart of the Elastic Stack. We then looked at the rest of the components of the Elastic Stack and how they fit into the ecosystem. We also looked at real-world use cases of the Elastic Stack. We successfully downloaded and installed Elasticsearch and Kibana to begin the journey of learning about the Elastic Stack.

In the next chapter, we will understand the core concepts of Elasticsearch. We will learn about indexes, types, shards, datatypes, mappings, and other fundamentals. We will also interact with Elasticsearch by ...

Getting Started with Elasticsearch

In the first chapter, we looked at the reasons for learning about and using the Elastic Stack, and the use cases of the Elastic Stack.

In this chapter, we will start our journey of learning about the Elastic Stack by looking at the core of the Elastic Stack – Elasticsearch. Elasticsearch is the search and analytics engine behind the Elastic Stack. We will learn about the core concepts of Elasticsearch while doing some hands-on practice, where we will learn about querying, filtering, and searching.

We will cover the following topics in this chapter:

- Using the Kibana Console UI
- Core concepts of Elasticsearch
- CRUD operations
- Creating indexes and taking control of mapping
- REST API overview

Using the Kibana Console UI

Before we start writing our first queries to interact with Elasticsearch, we should familiarize ourselves with a very important tool: Kibana Console. This is important because Elasticsearch has a very rich REST API, allowing you to do all sorts of operations with Elasticsearch. Kibana Console has an editor that is very capable and aware of the REST API. It allows for auto completion, and for the formatting of queries as you write them.

*What is a REST API? REST stands for **Representational State Transfer**. It is an architectural style that's used to make systems inter operate and interact with each other. REST has evolved along with the HTTP protocol, and almost all REST-based systems use HTTP as their protocol. HTTP supports ...*

Core concepts of Elasticsearch

Relational databases have concepts such as rows, columns, tables, and schemas. Elasticsearch and other document-oriented stores are based on different abstractions. Elasticsearch is a document-oriented store. JSON documents are first-class citizens in Elasticsearch. These JSON documents are organized within different types and indexes. We will look at the following core abstractions of Elasticsearch:

- Indexes
- Types
- Documents
- Clusters
- Nodes
- Shards and replicas
- Mappings and types
- Inverted indexes

Let's start learning about these with an example:

```
PUT /catalog/_doc/1
{
  "sku": "SP000001",
  "title": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop",
  "description": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop",
  "author": "Vishal Shukla",
  "ISBN": "1785288997",
  "price": 26.99
}
```

Copy and paste this example into the editor of your Kibana Console UI and execute it. This will index a document that represents a product in the product catalog of a system. All of the examples that are written for the Kibana Console UI can be very easily converted into `curl` commands that can be executed from the command line. The following is the curl version of the previous Kibana Console UI command:

```
curl -XPUT http://localhost:9200/catalog/_doc/1 -d '{ "sku": "SP000001", "title": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop", "description": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop", "author": "Vishal Shukla", "ISBN": "1785288997", "price": 26.99}'
```

We will use this example to understand the following concepts: indexes, types, and documents.

In the previous code block, the first line is `PUT /catalog/_doc/1`, which is followed by a JSON document.

`PUT` is the `HTTP` method that's used to index a new document. `PUT` is among the other `HTTP` methods we covered earlier. Here, `catalog` is the name of the index, `_doc` is the name of the type where the document will be indexed (more on this later; each index in Elasticsearch 7.0 should create just one type), and `1` is the ID to be assigned to the document after it is indexed.

The following sections explain each concept in depth.

Indexes

An **index** is a container that stores and manages documents of a single type in Elasticsearch. We will look at type in the next section. An index can contain documents of a single **Type**, as depicted in the following diagram:

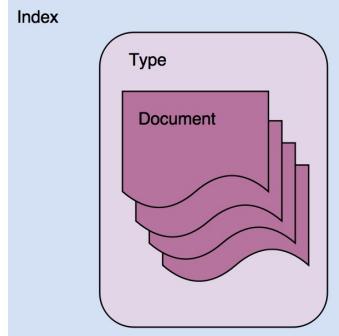


Figure 2.3: Organization of Index, Type, and Document

An index is a logical container of a type. Some configuration parameters are defined at the index level, while other configuration parameters are defined at the type level, as we will see later in this chapter.

The concept of index in Elasticsearch is roughly analogous to the database schema in a relational database. Going by that analogy, a type in Elasticsearch

...

Types

In our example of a product catalog, the document that was indexed was of the product type. Each document stored in the product type represents one product. Since the same index cannot have other types, such as customers, orders, and order line items, and more, types help in logically grouping or organizing the same kind of documents within an index.

Typically, documents with mostly common sets of fields are grouped under one type. Elasticsearch is schemaless, allowing you to store any JSON document with any set of fields into a type. In practice, we should avoid mixing completely different entities, such as customers and products, into a single type. It makes sense to store them in separate types within separate indexes.

The following code is for the index for customers:

```
PUT /customers/_doc/1
{
  "firstName": "John",
  "lastName": "Smith",
  "contact": {
    "mobile": "212-xxx-yyyy"
  },
  ...
}
```

The following code is for the index for products:

```
PUT /products/_doc/1
{
  "title": "Apple iPhone Xs (Gold, 4GB RAM, 64GB Storage, 12 MP Dual Camera, 458 PPI Display)",
  "price": 999.99,
  ...
}
```

As you can see, different types of documents are better handled in different indexes since they may have different sets of fields/attributes.

Documents

As we mentioned earlier, JSON documents are first-class citizens in Elasticsearch. A document consists of multiple fields and is the basic unit of information that's stored in Elasticsearch. For example, you may have a document representing a single product, a single customer, or a single order line item.

As depicted in the preceding diagram, which shows the relationship between indexes, types, and documents, documents are contained within indexes and types.

Documents contain multiple fields. Each field in the JSON document is of a particular type. In the product catalog example that we saw earlier, these fields were `sku`, `title`, `description`, and `price`. Each field and its value can be seen as a key-value pair in the document, where ...

Nodes

Elasticsearch is a distributed system. It consists of multiple processes running across different machines in a network that communicate with the other processes. In [Chapter 1, Introducing the Elastic Stack](#), we downloaded, installed, and started Elasticsearch. It started what is called a single node of Elasticsearch, or a single node Elasticsearch cluster.

An Elasticsearch node is a single server of Elasticsearch, which may be part of a larger cluster of nodes. It participates in indexing, searching, and performing other operations that are supported by Elasticsearch. Every Elasticsearch node is assigned a unique ID and name when it is started. A node can also be assigned a static name via the `node.name` parameter in the Elasticsearch configuration file, `config/elasticsearch.yml`.

*Every Elasticsearch node or instance has a main configuration file, which is located in the `config` subdirectory. The file is in YML format (which stands for **YAML Ain't Markup Language**). This configuration file can be used to change defaults such as the node name, port, and cluster name.*

At the lowest level, a node corresponds to one instance of the Elasticsearch process. It is responsible for managing its share of data.

Clusters

A cluster hosts one or more indexes and is responsible for providing operations such as searching, indexing, and aggregations. A cluster is formed by one or more nodes. Every Elasticsearch node is always part of a cluster, even if it is just a single node cluster. By default, every Elasticsearch node tries to join a cluster with the name Elasticsearch. If you start multiple nodes on the same network without modifying the `cluster.name` property in `config/elasticsearch.yml`, they form a cluster automatically.

It is advisable to modify the `cluster.name` property in the Elasticsearch configuration file to avoid joining another cluster in the same network. Since the default behavior of a node is to join an existing cluster within the network, ...

Shards and replicas

First, let's understand what a shard is. An index contains documents of one or more types. Shards help in distributing an index over the cluster. Shards help in dividing the documents of a single index over multiple nodes. There is a limit to the amount of data that can be stored on a single node, and that limit is dictated by the storage, memory, and processing capacities of that node. Shards help by splitting the data of a single index over the cluster, and hence allowing the storage, memory, and processing capacities of the cluster to be utilized.

The process of dividing the data among shards is called **sharding**. Sharding is inherent in Elasticsearch and is a way of scaling and parallelizing, as follows:

- It helps in utilizing storage across different nodes of the cluster
- It helps in utilizing the processing power of different nodes of the cluster

By default, every index is configured to have five shards in Elasticsearch. At the time of creating the index, you can specify the number of shards from which the data will be divided for your index. Once an index is created, the number of shards cannot be modified.

The following diagram illustrates how five shards of one index may be distributed on a three-node cluster:

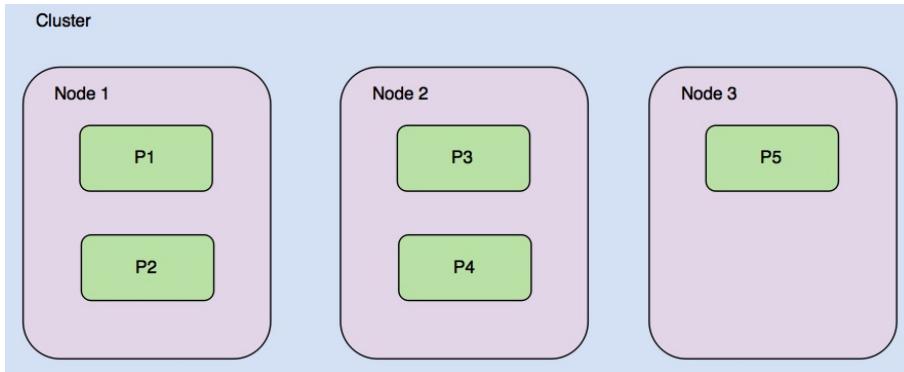


Figure 2.4: Organization of shards across the nodes of a cluster

The shards are named **P1** to **P5** in the preceding diagram. Each shard contains roughly one fifth of the total data stored in the index. When a query is made against this index, Elasticsearch takes care of going through all the shards and consolidating the result.

Now, imagine that one of the nodes (**Node 1**) goes down. With **Node 1**, we also lose the share of data, which was stored in shards **P1** and **P2**:

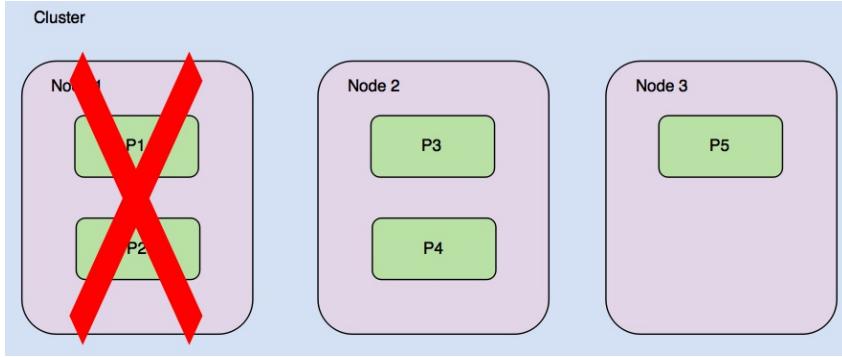


Figure 2.5: Failure of one node, along with the loss of its shards

Distributed systems such as Elasticsearch are expected to run in spite of hardware failure. This issue is addressed by **replica shards** or **replicas**. Each shard in an index can be configured to have zero or more replica shards. Replica shards are extra copies of the original or primary shard and provide a high availability of data.

For example, with one replica of each shard, we will have one extra copy of each replica. In the following diagram, we have five primary shards, with one replica of each shard:

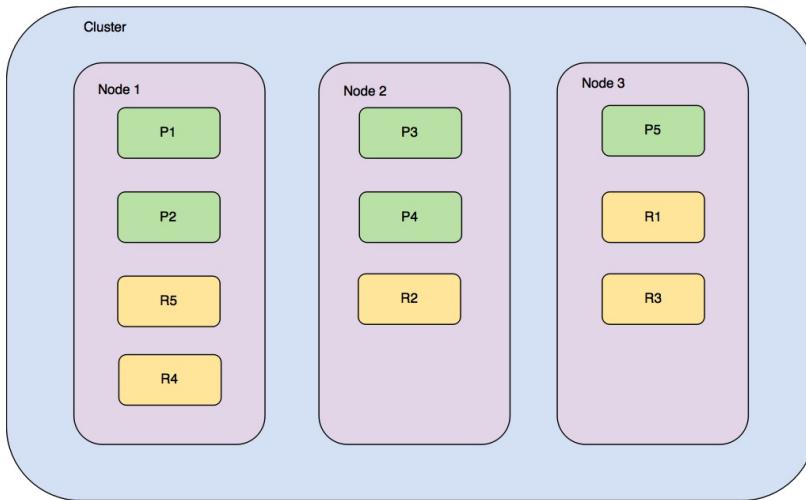


Figure 2.6: Organization of shards with replicas on cluster nodes

Primary shards are depicted in green and replica shards are depicted in yellow. With the replicas in place, if **Node 1** goes down, we still have all the shards available in **Node 2** and **Node 3**. Replica shards may be promoted to primary shards when the corresponding primary shard fails.

Apart from providing high availability and failover, replica shards also enable the querying workload to be executed over replicas. Read operations such as search, query, and aggregations can be executed on replicas as well. Elasticsearch transparently distributes the execution of queries across nodes of the cluster where the required shards or replicas are located.

To summarize, nodes get together to form a cluster. Clusters provide a physical layer of services on which multiple indexes can be created. An index may contain one or more types, with each type containing millions or billions

of documents. Indexes are split into shards, which are partitions of underlying data within an index. Shards are distributed across the nodes of a cluster. Replicas are copies of primary shards and provide high availability and failover.

Mappings and datatypes

Elasticsearch is schemaless, meaning that you can store documents with any number of fields and types of fields. In a real-world scenario, data is never completely schemaless or unstructured. There are always some sets of fields that are common across all documents in a type. In fact, types within the indexes should be created based on common fields. Typically, one type of document in an index shares some common fields.

Relational databases impose a strict structure. In a relational database, you need to define the structure of the table with column names and datatypes for each column at the time of creating the table. You cannot insert a record with a new column or a different datatype column at runtime.

It is important ...

Datatypes

Elasticsearch supports a wide variety of datatypes for different scenarios where you want to store text data, numbers, booleans, binary objects, arrays, objects, nested types, geo-points, geo-shapes, and many other specialized datatypes, such as IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

In a document, each field has a datatype associated with it. A summary of the datatypes supported by Elasticsearch is discussed in the following sections.

Core datatypes

The core datatypes supported by Elasticsearch are as follows:

- **String datatypes:**

- `text`: The `text` datatype is useful for supporting full-text search for fields that contain a description or lengthy text values. These fields are analyzed before indexing to support full-text search.
- `keyword`: The `keyword` type enables analytics on string fields. Fields of this type support sorting, filtering, and aggregations.

- **Numeric datatypes:**

- `byte`, `short`, `integer`, and `long`: Signed integers with 8-bit, 16-bit, 32-bit, and 64-bit precision, respectively
- `float` and `double`: IEEE 754 floating-point numbers with single-precision 32-bit and double-precision 64-bit representations
- `half_float`: IEEE 754 floating-point number with half-precision 16-bit ...

Complex datatypes

The complex datatypes supported by Elasticsearch are as follows:

- **Array datatype:** Arrays of the same types of instances. For example, arrays of strings, integers, and more. Doesn't allow for the mixing of datatypes in arrays.
- **Object datatype:** Allows inner objects within JSON documents.
- **Nested datatype:** Useful for supporting arrays of inner objects, where each inner object needs to be independently queriable.

Other datatypes

The other datatypes supported by Elasticsearch are as follows:

- **Geo-point datatype:** Allows the storing of geo-points as longitude and latitude. The geo-point datatype enables queries such as searching across all ATMs within a distance of 2 km from a point.
- **Geo-shape datatype:** Allows you to store geometric shapes such as polygons, maps, and more. Geo-shape enables queries such as searching for all items within a shape.
- **IP datatype:** Allows you to store IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

Mappings

To understand mappings, let's add another product to the product catalog:

```
PUT /catalog/_doc/2
{
  "sku": "SP000002",
  "title": "Google Pixel Phone 32GB - 5 inch display",
  "description": "Google Pixel Phone 32GB - 5 inch display (Factory Unlocked US Version)",
  "price": 400.00,
  "resolution": "1440 x 2560 pixels",
  "os": "Android 7.1"
}
```

Copy and paste this example into the editor of your Kibana Console UI and execute it.

As you can see, the product has many different fields, as it is of a completely different category. Yet, there are some fields that are common in all products. The common fields are the reason why all of these documents are called **products**.

Remember, unlike relational databases, we didn't have to define the fields that would be part of each document. In fact, we didn't even have to create an index with the name catalog. When the first document about the product type was indexed in the index catalog, the following tasks were performed by Elasticsearch:

- Creating an index with the name catalog
- Defining the mappings for the type of documents that will be stored in the index's default type – `_doc`

Creating an index with the name catalog

The first step involves creating an index, because the index doesn't exist already. The index is created using the default number of shards. We will look at a concept called **index templates** – you can create templates for any new indexes. Sometimes, an index needs to be created on the fly, just like in this case, where the insertion of the first document triggers the creation of a new index. The index template kicks in and provides the matching template for the index while creating the new index. This helps in creating indexes in a controlled way, that is, with desired defaults, like the number of shards and type mappings for the types within them.

An index can be created beforehand as well. Elasticsearch ...

Defining the mappings for the type of product

The second step involves defining the mappings for the type of product. This step is executed because the type catalog did not exist before the first document was indexed. Remember the analogy of type with a relational database table. The table needs to exist before any row can be inserted. When a table is created in an **RDBMS (Relational Database Management System)**, we define the fields (columns) and their datatypes in the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

When the first document is indexed within a type that doesn't exist yet, Elasticsearch tries to infer the datatypes of all the fields. This feature is called the **dynamic mapping** of types. By default, the dynamic mapping of types is enabled in Elasticsearch.

To see the mappings of the product type in the catalog index, execute the following command in the Kibana Console UI:

```
GET /catalog/_mapping
```

This is an example of a `GET` mapping API (<https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/reference/current/indices-get-mapping.html>). You can request mappings of a specific type, all the types within an index, or within multiple indexes.

The response should look like the following:

```
{
  "catalog" : {
    "mappings" : {
      "properties" : {
        "ISBN" : {
          "type" : "text",
          "fields" : {
            "keyword" : {
              "type" : "keyword",
              "ignore_above" : 256
            }
          }
        },
        "author" : {
          "type" : "text",
          "fields" : {
            "keyword" : {
              "type" : "keyword",
              "ignore_above" : 256
            }
          }
        },
        "description" : {
          "type" : "text",
          "fields" : {
            "keyword" : {
              "type" : "keyword"
            }
          }
        }
      }
    }
}
```

```
        "ignore_above" : 256
    }
}
},
"os" : {
    "type" : "text",
    "fields" : {
        "keyword" : {
            "type" : "keyword",
            "ignore_above" : 256
        }
    }
},
"price" : {
    "type" : "float"
},
"resolution" : {
    "type" : "text",
    "fields" : {
        "keyword" : {
            "type" : "keyword",
            "ignore_above" : 256
        }
    }
},
"sku" : {
    "type" : "text",
    "fields" : {
        "keyword" : {
            "type" : "keyword",
            "ignore_above" : 256
        }
    }
},
"title" : {
    "type" : "text",
    "fields" : {
        "keyword" : {
            "type" : "keyword",
            "ignore_above" : 256
        }
    }
}
}
```

At the top level of the JSON response, `catalog` is the index for which we requested mappings. The `mappings` child product signifies the fact that these are mappings for the product type. The actual datatype mappings for each field are under the `properties` element.

The actual type mappings that are returned will be slightly different from the ones shown in the preceding code. It has been simplified slightly. As you can see, only `price` is of the `float` datatype; the other fields were mapped to the `text` type. In reality, each `text` datatype field is mapped as follows:

```
"field_name": {  
    "type": "text",  
    "fields": {  
        "keyword": {  
            "type": "keyword",  
            "ignore_above": 256  
        }  
    }  
}
```

As you may have noticed, each field that was sent as a string is assigned the `text` datatype. The `text` datatype enables full-text search on a field. Additionally, the same field is also stored as a multi-field, and it is also stored as a `keyword` type. This effectively enables full-text search and analytics (such as sorting, aggregations, and filtering) on the same field. We will look at both search and analytics in the upcoming chapters of this book.

Inverted indexes

An **inverted index** is the core data structure of Elasticsearch and any other system supporting full-text search. An inverted index is similar to the index that you see at the end of any book. It maps the terms that appear in the documents to the documents.

For example, you may build an inverted index from the following strings:

Document ID	Document
1	It is Sunday tomorrow.
2	Sunday is the last day of the week.
3	The choice is yours.

Elasticsearch builds a data structure from the three documents that have been indexed. The following data structure is called an **inverted index**:

Term	Frequency	Documents (postings)
choice	1	3
day	1	2
is	3	1, 2, 3
it	1	1

CRUD operations

In this section, we will look at how to perform basic CRUD operations, which are the most fundamental operations required by any data store. Elasticsearch has a very well-designed REST API, and the CRUD operations are targeted at documents.

To understand how to perform CRUD operations, we will cover the following APIs. These APIs fall under the category of document APIs, which deal with documents:

- Index API
- Get API
- Update API
- Delete API

Index API

In Elasticsearch terminology, adding (or creating) a document to a type within an index of Elasticsearch is called an **indexing operation**. Essentially, it involves adding the document to the index by parsing all the fields within the document and building the inverted index. This is why this operation is known as an **indexing operation**.

There are two ways we can index a document:

- Indexing a document by providing an ID
- Indexing a document without providing an ID

Indexing a document by providing an ID

We have already seen this version of the indexing operation. The user can provide the ID of the document using the `PUT` method.

The format of this request is `PUT /<index>/<type>/<id>`, with the JSON document as the body of the request:

```
PUT /catalog/_doc/1
{
  "sku": "SP000001",
  "title": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop",
  "description": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop",
  "author": "Vishal Shukla",
  "ISBN": "1785288997",
  "price": 26.99
}
```

Indexing a document without providing an ID

If you don't want to control the ID generation for the documents, you can use the `POST` method.

The format of this request is `POST /<index>/<type>`, with the JSON document as the body of the request:

```
POST /catalog/_doc{ "sku": "SP000003", "title": "Mastering Elasticsearch",  
"description": "Mastering Elasticsearch", "author": "Bharvi Dixit", "price": 54.99}
```

The ID, in this case, will be generated by Elasticsearch. It is a hash string, as highlighted in the response:

```
{ "_index": "catalog", "_type": "_doc", "_id": "iZFMpmoBa_wgE5i2FfwV", "_version":  
1, "result": "created", "_shards": { "total": 2, "successful": 1,  
"failed": 0 }, "_seq_no": 4, "_primary_term": 1}
```

As per pure REST conventions, ...

Get API

The get API is useful for retrieving a document when you already know the ID of the document. It is essentially a get by primary key operation, as follows:

```
GET /catalog/_doc/1ZFMpmoBa_wgE5i2FfwV
```

The format of this request is `GET /<index>/<type>/<id>`. The response would be as expected:

```
{
  "_index": "catalog",
  "_type": "_doc",
  "_id": "1ZFMpmoBa_wgE5i2FfwV",
  "_version": 1,
  "_seq_no": 4,
  "_primary_term": 1,
  "found": true,
  "_source": {
    "sku": "SP000003",
    "title": "Mastering Elasticsearch",
    "description": "Mastering Elasticsearch",
    "author": "Bharvi Dixit",
    "price": 54.99
  }
}
```

Update API

The update API is useful for updating the existing document by ID.

The format of an update request is `POST <index>/<type>/<id>/_update`, with a JSON request as the body:

```
POST /catalog/_update/1{ "doc": { "price": "28.99" }}
```

The properties specified under the `doc` element are merged into the existing document. The previous version of this document with an ID of `1` had a price of `26.99`. This update operation just updates the price and leaves the other fields of the document unchanged. This type of update means that `doc` is specified and used as a partial document to merge with an existing document; there are other types of updates supported.

The response of the update request is as follows:

```
{ "_index": "catalog", "_type": "_doc", "_id" ... }
```

Delete API

The delete API lets you delete a document by ID:

```
DELETE /catalog/_doc/1ZFMpmoBa_wgE5i2FfwV
```

The response of the delete operation is as follows:

```
{
  "_index": "catalog",
  "_type": "_doc",
  "_id": "1ZFMpmoBa_wgE5i2FfwV",
  "_version": 4,
  "result": "deleted",
  "_shards": {
    "total": 2,
    "successful": 1,
    "failed": 0
  },
  "_seq_no": 9,
  "_primary_term": 1
}
```

This is how basic CRUD operations are performed with Elasticsearch. Please bear in mind that Elasticsearch maintains data in a completely different data structure, that is, an inverted index, using the capabilities of Apache Lucene. A relational database builds and maintains B-trees, which are more suitable for typical CRUD operations.

Creating indexes and taking control of mapping

In the previous section, we learned how to perform CRUD operations with Elasticsearch. In the process, we saw how indexing the first document to an index that doesn't yet exist, results in the creation of the new index and the mapping of the type.

Usually, you wouldn't want to let things happen automatically, as you would want to control how indexes are created and also how mapping is created. We will see how you can take control of this process in this section and we will look at the following:

- Creating an index
- Creating a mapping
- Updating a mapping

Creating an index

You can create an index and specify the number of shards and replicas to create:

```
PUT /catalog
{
  "settings": {
    "index": {
      "number_of_shards": 5,
      "number_of_replicas": 2
    }
  }
}
```

It is possible to specify a mapping for a type at the time of index creation. The following command will create an index called catalog, with five shards and two replicas. Additionally, it also defines a type called `my_type` with two fields, one of the `text` type and another of the `keyword` type:

```
PUT /catalog1
{
  "settings": {
    "index": {
      "number_of_shards": 5,
      "number_of_replicas": 2
    }
  },
  "mappings": {
    "properties": {
      "f1": {
        "type": "text"
      },
      "f2": {
        "type": "keyword"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Creating type mapping in an existing index

With Elasticsearch 7.0, indexes contain strictly one type, and hence it is generally recommended that you create the index and the default type within that index at index creation time. The default type name is `_doc`.

In the earlier versions of Elasticsearch (6.0 and before), it was possible to define an index and then add multiple types to that index as needed. This is still possible but it is a deprecated feature. A type can be added within an index after the index is created using the following code. The mappings for the type can be specified as follows:

```
PUT /catalog/_mapping{ "properties": { "name": { "type": "text" } }}
```

This command creates a type called `_doc`, with one field of the `text` type ...

Updating a mapping

Mappings for new fields can be added after a type has been created. A mapping can be updated for a type with the `PUT` mapping API. Let's add a `code` field, which is of the `keyword` type, but with no analysis:

```
PUT /catalog/_mapping
{
  "properties": {
    "code": {
      "type": "keyword"
    }
  }
}
```

This mapping is merged into the existing mappings of the `_doc` type. The mapping looks like the following after it is merged:

```
{
  "catalog" : {
    "mappings" : {
      "properties" : {
        "code" : {
          "type" : "keyword"
        },
        "description" : {
          "type" : "text",
          "fields" : {
            "keyword" : {
              "type" : "keyword",
              "ignore_above" : 256
            }
          }
        },
        "name" : {
          "type" : "text"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Any subsequent documents that are indexed with the `code` field are assigned the right datatype:

```
POST /catalog/_doc
{
  "name": "sports",
  "code": "C004",
  "description": "Sports equipment"
}
```

This is how we can take control of the index creation and type mapping process, and add fields after the type is created.

REST API overview

We just looked at how to perform basic CRUD operations. Elasticsearch supports a wide variety of operation types. Some operations deal with documents, that is, creating, reading, updating, deleting, and more. Some operations provide search and aggregations, while other operations are for providing cluster-related operations, such as monitoring health. Broadly, the APIs that deal with Elasticsearch are categorized into the following types of APIs:

- Document APIs
- Search APIs
- Aggregation APIs
- Indexes APIs
- Cluster APIs
- cat APIs

The Elasticsearch reference documentation has documented these APIs very nicely. In this book, we will not go into the APIs down to the last detail. We will conceptually understand, with examples, how ...

Common API conventions

All Elasticsearch REST APIs share some common features. They can be used across almost all APIs. In this section, we will cover the following features:

- Formatting the JSON response
- Dealing with multiple indexes

Let's look at each item, one by one, in the following sections.

Formatting the JSON response

By default, the response of all the requests is not formatted. It returns an unformatted JSON string in a single line:

```
curl -XGET http://localhost:9200/catalog/_doc/1
```

The following response is not formatted:

```
{"_index": "catalog", "_type": "product", "_id": "1", "_version": 3, "found": true, "_source": {  
    "sku": "SP000001", "title": "Elasticsearch for Hadoop", "description": "Elasticsearch for  
    Hadoop", "author": "Vishal Shukla", "ISBN": "1785288997", "price": 26.99}}
```

Passing `pretty=true` formats the response:

```
curl -XGET http://localhost:9200/catalog/_doc/1?pretty=true{ "_index" : "catalog",  
    "_type" : "product", "_id" : "1", "_version" : 3, "found" : true, "_source" : { "sku" :  
    "SP000001", "title" : "Elasticsearch for Hadoop", ...
```

Dealing with multiple indexes

Operations such as search and aggregations can run against multiple indexes in the same query. It is possible to specify which indexes should be searched by using different URLs in the `GET` request. Let's understand how the URLs can be used to search in different indexes and the types within them. We cover the following scenarios when dealing with multiple indexes within a cluster:

- Searching all documents in all indexes
- Searching all documents in one index
- Searching all documents of one type in an index
- Searching all documents in multiple indexes
- Searching all documents of a particular type in all indexes

The following query matches all documents. The documents that are actually returned by the query will be limited to 10 in this case. The default size of the result is 10, unless specified otherwise in the query:

```
GET /_search
```

This will return all the documents from all the indexes of the cluster. The response looks similar to the following, and it is truncated to remove the unnecessary repetition of documents:

```
{
  "took": 3,
  "timed_out": false,
  "_shards": {
    "total": 16,
    "successful": 16,
    </span>"failed": 0
  },
  "hits": {
    "total": 4,
    "max_score": 1,
    "hits": [
      {
        "_index": ".kibana",
        "_type": "doc",
        "_id": "config:7.0.0",
        "_score": 1,
        "_source": {
          "type": "config",
          "config": {
            "buildNum": 16070
          }
        }
      },
      ...
      ...
    ]
  }
}
```

```
}
```

Clearly, this is not a very useful operation, but let's use it to understand the search response:

- `took`: The number of milliseconds taken by the cluster to return the result.
- `timed_out: false`: This means that the operation completed successfully without timing out.
- `_shards`: Shows the summary of how many shards across the entire cluster were searched for successfully, or failed.
- `hits`: Contains the actual documents that matched. It contains `total`, which signifies the total documents that matched the search criteria across all indexes. The `max_score` displays the score of the best matching document from the search hits. The `hits` child of this element contains the actual document list.

The hits list contained within an array doesn't contain all matched documents. It would be wasteful to return everything that matched the search criteria, as there could be millions or billions of such matched documents. Elasticsearch truncates the hits by `size`, which can be optionally specified as a request parameter using `GET /_search?size=100`. The default value for the `size` is 10, hence the search hits array will contain up to 10 records by default.

Searching all documents in one index

The following code will search for all documents, but only within the catalog index:

```
GET /catalog/_search
```

You can also be more specific and include the type in addition to the index name, like so:

```
GET /catalog/_doc/_search
```

The version with the `_doc` type name produces a deprecation warning because each index is supposed to contain only one type.

Searching all documents in multiple indexes

The following will search for all the documents within the `catalog` index and an index named `my_index`:

```
GET /catalog,my_index/_search
```

Searching all the documents of a particular type in all indexes

The following will search all the indexes in the cluster, but only documents of the product type will be searched:

```
GET /_all/_doc/_search
```

This feature can be quite handy when you have multiple indexes, with each index containing the exact same type. This type of query can help you query data for that type from all indexes.

Summary

In this chapter, we learned about the essential Kibana Console UI and curl commands that we can use to interact with Elasticsearch with the REST API. Then, we looked at the core concepts of Elasticsearch. We performed customary CRUD operations, which are required as support for any data store. We took a closer look at how to create indexes, and how to create and manage mappings. We ended this chapter with an overview of the REST API in Elasticsearch, and the common conventions that are used in most APIs.

In the next chapter, we will take a deep dive into the search capabilities of Elasticsearch to understand the maximum benefits of Elasticsearch as a search engine.

Section 2: Analytics and Visualizing Data

This section will introduce you to Elasticsearch topics such as text analysis, tokenizers, and analyzers, and to the importance of analysis. We will also learn about aggregation and see how we can acquire powerful insights from terabytes of data. Then, we will learn how to analyze log data using Logstash. You will gain insights into the architecture of Logstash and how to set it up. After that, we will see how filters bring Logstash closer to other real-time and near-real-time stream processing frameworks without the need to code. Finally, we will look at visualizations using Kibana. You will be amazed at how easy it is to create dashboards using Kibana.

This section includes the following chapters: ...

Searching - What is Relevant

One of the core strengths of Elasticsearch is its search capabilities. In the previous chapter, we gained a good understanding of Elasticsearch's core concepts, its REST API, and its basic operations. With all that knowledge at hand, we will further our journey by learning about the Elastic Stack.

We will cover the following topics in this chapter:

- The basics of text analysis
- Searching from structured data
- Writing compound queries
- Searching from full-text
- Modeling relationships

The basics of text analysis

The analysis of text data is different from other types of data analysis, such as numbers, dates, and times. The analysis of numeric and date/time datatypes can be done in a very definitive way. For example, if you are looking for all records with a price greater than, or equal to, 50, the result is a simple yes or no for each record. Either the record in question qualifies or doesn't qualify for inclusion in the query's result. Similarly, when querying something by date or time, the criteria for searching through records is very clearly defined – a record either falls into the date/time range or it doesn't.

However, the analysis of text/string data can be different. Text data can be of a different nature, and ...

Understanding Elasticsearch analyzers

The main task of an analyzer is to take the value of a field and break it down into terms. In [chapter 2](#), *Getting Started with Elasticsearch*, we looked at the structure of an inverted index. The job of the analyzer is to take documents and each field within them and extract terms from them. These terms make the index searchable, that is, they can help us find out which documents contain particular search terms.

The analyzer performs this process of breaking up input character streams into terms. This happens twice:

- At the time of indexing
- At the time of searching

The core task of the analyzer is to parse the document fields and build the actual index.

Every field of `text` type needs to be analyzed before the document is indexed. This process of analysis is what makes the documents searchable by any term that is used at the time of searching.

Analyzers can be configured on a per field basis, that is, it is possible to have two fields of the `text` type within the same document, each one using different analyzers.

Elasticsearch uses analyzers to analyze text data. An analyzer has the following components:

- **Character filters:** Zero or more
- **Tokenizer:** Exactly one
- **Token filters:** Zero or more

The following diagram depicts the components of an analyzer:

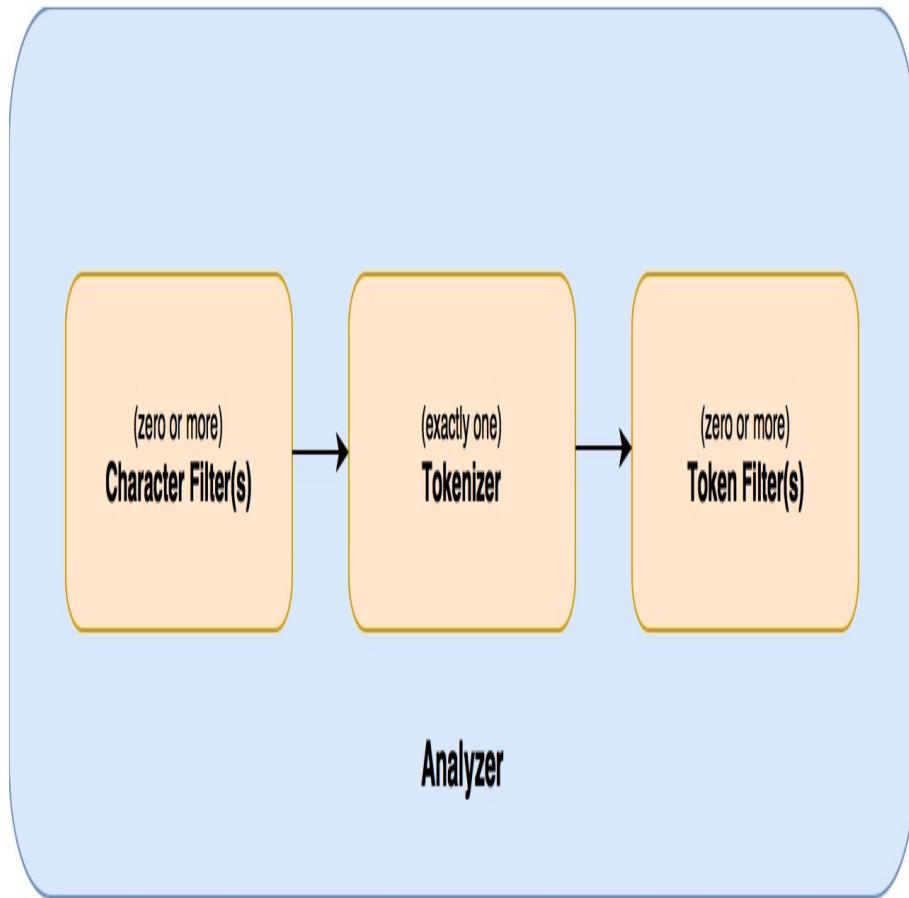


Figure 3.1: Anatomy of an analyzer

Let's understand the role of each component one by one.

Character filters

When composing an analyzer, we can configure zero or more character filters. A character filter works on a stream of characters from the input field; each character filter can add, remove, or change the characters in the input field.

Elasticsearch ships with a few built-in character filters, which you can use to compose or create your own custom analyzer.

For example, one of the character filters that Elasticsearch ships with is the Mapping Char Filter. It can map a character or sequence of characters into target characters.

For example, you may want to transform emoticons into some text that represents those emoticons:

- :) should be translated to `_smile_`
- :(should be translated to `_sad_`
- :D should be translated to `_laugh_` ...

Tokenizer

An analyzer has exactly one tokenizer. The responsibility of a tokenizer is to receive a stream of characters and generate a stream of tokens. These tokens are used to build an inverted index. A token is roughly equivalent to a word. In addition to breaking down characters into words or tokens, it also produces, in its output, the start and end offset of each token in the input stream.

Elasticsearch ships with a number of tokenizers that can be used to compose a custom analyzer; these tokenizers are also used by Elasticsearch itself to compose its built-in analyzers.

You can find a list of available built-in tokenizers here: <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/reference/current/analysis-tokenizers.html>.

Standard tokenizer is one of the most popular tokenizers as it is suitable for most languages. Let's look at what standard tokenizer does.

Standard tokenizer

Loosely speaking, the standard tokenizer breaks down a stream of characters by separating them with whitespace characters and punctuation.

The following example shows how the standard tokenizer breaks a character stream into tokens:

```
POST _analyze{ "tokenizer": "standard", "text": "Tokenizer breaks characters into tokens!"}
```

The preceding command produces the following output; notice the `start_offset`, `end_offset`, and `positions` in the output:

```
{ "tokens": [ { "token": "Tokenizer", "start_offset": 0, "end_offset": 9, "type": "<ALPHANUM>", "position": 0 }, { "token": "breaks", "start_offset": 10, "end_offset": 16, "type": "<ALPHANUM>", "position": 1 }, { "token": "characters", "start_offset": 17, "end_offset": 27, "type": "<ALPHANUM>", ... }
```

Token filters

There can be zero or more token filters in an analyzer. Every token filter can add, remove, or change tokens in the input token stream that it receives. Since it is possible to have multiple token filters in an analyzer, the output of each token filter is sent to the next one until all token filters are considered.

Elasticsearch comes with a number of token filters, and they can be used to compose your own custom analyzers.

Some examples of built-in token filters are the following:

- **Lowercase token filter:** Replaces all tokens in the input with their lowercase versions.
- **Stop token filter:** Removes stopwords, that is, words that do not add more meaning to the context. For example, in English sentences, words like *is*, *a*, *an*, and *the*, do not add extra meaning to a sentence. For many text search problems, it makes sense to remove such words, as they don't add any extra meaning or context to the content.

You can find a list of available built-in token filters here: <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/reference/current/analysis-tokenfilters.html>.

Thus far, we have looked at the role of character filters, tokenizers, and token filters. This sets us up to understand how some of the built-in analyzers in Elasticsearch are composed.

Using built-in analyzers

Elasticsearch comes with a number of built-in analyzers that can be used directly. Almost all of these analyzers work without any need for additional configuration, but they provide the flexibility of configuring some parameters.

Some analyzers come packaged with Elasticsearch. Some popular analyzers are the following:

- **Standard analyzer:** This is the default analyzer in Elasticsearch. If not overridden by any other field-level, type-level, or index-level analyzer, all fields are analyzed using this analyzer.
- **Language analyzers:** Different languages have different grammatical rules. There are differences between some languages as to how a stream of characters is tokenized into words or tokens.
Additionally, each language ...

Standard analyzer

Standard Analyzer is suitable for many languages and situations. It can also be customized for the underlying language or situation. Standard analyzer comprises of the following components:

Tokenizer:

- **Standard tokenizer:** A tokenizer that splits tokens at whitespace characters

Token filters:

- **Standard token filter:** Standard token filter is used as a placeholder token filter within the Standard Analyzer. It does not change any of the input tokens but may be used in future to perform some tasks.
- **Lowercase token filter:** Makes all tokens in the input lowercase.
- **Stop token filter:** Removes specified stopwords. The default setting has a stopword list set to `_none`, which doesn't remove any stopwords by default.

Let's see how Standard analyzer works by default with an example:

```
PUT index_standard_analyzer
{
  "settings": {
    "analysis": {
      "analyzer": {
        "std": {
          "type": "standard"
        }
      }
    }
  },
  "mappings": {
    "properties": {
      "my_text": {
        "type": "text",
        "analyzer": "std"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Here, we created an index, `index_standard_analyzer`. There are two things to notice here:

- Under the `settings` element, we explicitly defined one analyzer with the

name `std`. The `type` of analyzer is `standard`. Apart from this, we did not do any additional configuration on Standard Analyzer.

- We created one type called `_doc` in the index and explicitly set a field level analyzer on the only field, `my_text`.

Let's check how Elasticsearch will do the analysis for the `my_text` field whenever any document is indexed in this index. We can do this test using the `_analyze` API, as we saw earlier:

```
POST index_standard_analyzer/_analyze
{
  "field": "my_text",
  "text": "The Standard Analyzer works this way."
}
```

The output of this command shows the following tokens:

```
{
  "tokens": [
    {
      "token": "the",
      "start_offset": 0,
      "end_offset": 3,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 0
    },
    {
      "token": "standard",
      "start_offset": 4,
      "end_offset": 12,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 1
    },
    {
      "token": "analyzer",
      "start_offset": 13,
      "end_offset": 21,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 2
    },
    {
      "token": "works",
      "start_offset": 22,
      "end_offset": 27,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 3
    },
    {
      "token": "this",
      "start_offset": 28,
      "end_offset": 32,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 4
    },
    {
      "token": "way",
      "start_offset": 33,
      "end_offset": 36,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 5
    }
  ]
}
```

Please note that, in this case, the field level analyzer for the `my_field` field was set to Standard Analyzer explicitly. Even if it wasn't set explicitly for the field, Standard Analyzer is the default analyzer if no other analyzer is specified.

As you can see, all of the tokens in the output are lowercase. Even though the Standard Analyzer has a stop token filter, none of the tokens are filtered out. This is why the `_analyze` output has all words as tokens.

Let's create another index that uses English language stopwords:

```
PUT index_standard_analyzer_english_stopwords
{
  "settings": {
    "analysis": {
      "analyzer": {
        "std": {
          "type": "standard",
          "stopwords": "_english_"
        }
      }
    }
  },
  "mappings": {
    "properties": {
      "my_text": {
        "type": "text",
        "analyzer": "std"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Notice the difference here. This new index is using `_english_` stopwords. You can also specify a list of stopwords directly, such as `stopwords: (a, an, the)`. The `_english_` value includes all such English words.

When you try the `_analyze` API on the new index, you will see that it removes the stopwords, such as `the` and `this`:

```
POST index_standard_analyzer_english_stopwords/_analyze
{
  "field": "my_text",
  "text": "The Standard Analyzer works this way."
}
```

It returns a response like the following:

```
{
  "tokens": [
    {
      "token": "standard",
      "start_offset": 4,
      "end_offset": 12,
      "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
      "position": 1
    },
    {
      "token": "analyzer",
      "start_offset": 13,
      "end_offset": 21,
```

```
        "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
        "position": 2
    },
    {
        "token": "works",
        "start_offset": 22,
        "end_offset": 27,
        "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
        "position": 3
    },
    {
        "token": "way",
        "start_offset": 33,
        "end_offset": 36,
        "type": "<ALPHANUM>",
        "position": 5
    }
]
```

English stopwords such as `the` and `this` are removed. As you can see, with a little configuration, Standard Analyzer can be used for English and many other languages.

Let's go through a practical application of creating a custom analyzer.

Implementing autocomplete with a custom analyzer

In certain situations, you may want to create your own custom analyzer by composing character filters, tokenizers, and token filters of your choice.

Please remember that most requirements can be fulfilled by one of the built-in analyzers with some configuration. Let's create an analyzer that can help when implementing autocomplete functionality.

To support autocomplete, we cannot rely on Standard Analyzer or one of the pre-built analyzers in Elasticsearch. The analyzer is responsible for generating the terms at indexing time. Our analyzer should be able to generate the terms that can help with autocompletion. Let's understand this through a concrete example.

If we were to use Standard Analyzer ...

Searching from structured data

In certain situations, we may want to find out whether a given document should be included or not; that is, a simple binary answer. On the other hand, there are other types of queries that are relevance-based. Such relevance-based queries also return a score against each document to say how well that document fits the query. Most structured queries do not need relevance-based scoring, and the answer is a simple yes/no for any item to be included or excluded from the result. These structured search queries are also referred to as **term-level queries**.

Let's understand the flow of a term-level query's execution:

Term level query flow

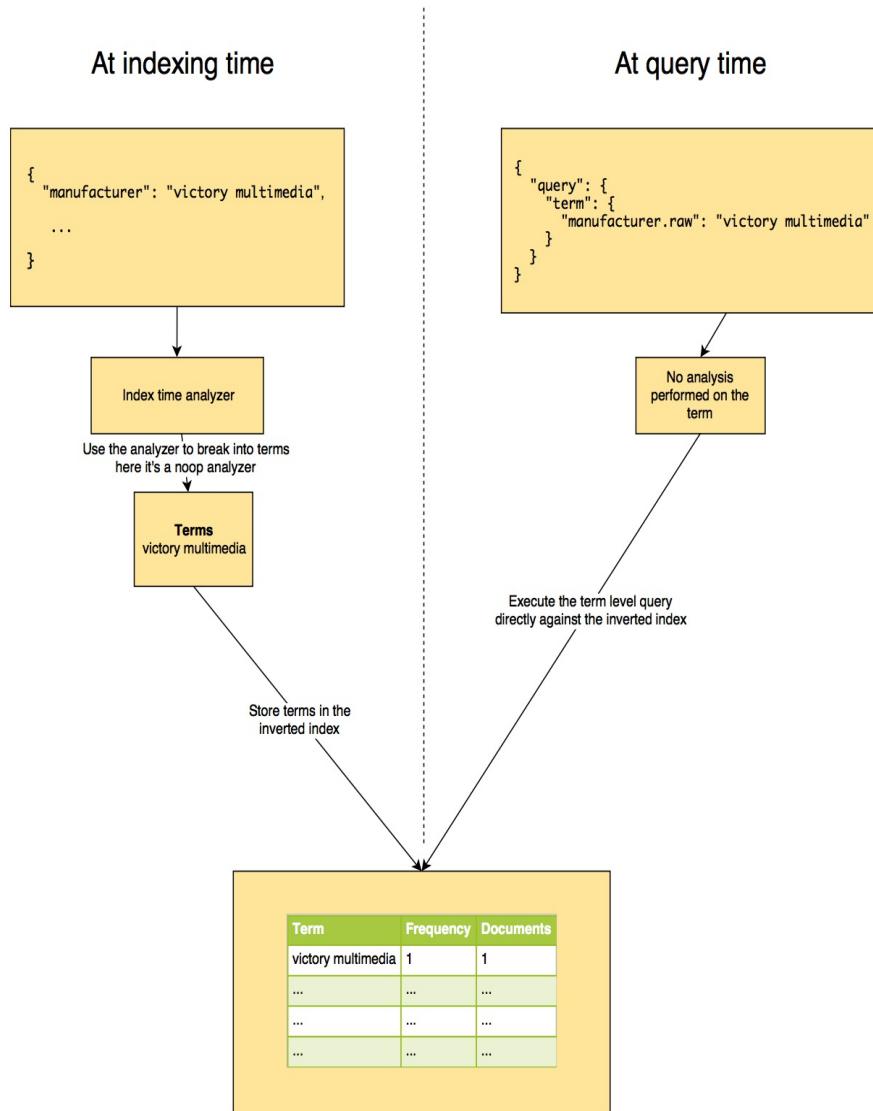


Figure 3.2: Term-level query flow

As you can see, the figure is divided into two parts. The left-hand half of the figure depicts what happens at the time of indexing, and the right-hand half depicts what happens at the time of a query when a term-level query is executed.

Looking at the left-hand half of the figure, we can see what happens during indexing. Here, specifically, we are looking at how the inverted index is built and queried for the `manufacturer.raw` field. Remember, from our definition of the index, the `manufacturer.raw` field is of the `keyword` type. The `keyword` type fields are not analyzed; the field's value is directly stored as a term in the inverted index.

At query time, when we search using a `term` query that is a term-level query, we see the flow of execution on the right-hand half of the figure. The `term` query, as we will see later in this section, is a term-level query that directly passes on

the `victory multimedia` search term, without breaking it down using an analyzer. This is how term-level queries completely skip the analysis process at query time and directly search for the given term in the inverted index.

These term-level queries create a foundation layer on which other, high-level, full-text queries are built. We will look at high-level queries in the next section.

We will cover the following structured or term-level queries:

- Range query
- Exists query
- Term query
- Terms query

Range query

Range queries can be applied to fields with datatypes that have natural ordering. For example, integers, logs, and dates have a natural order. There is no ambiguity in deciding whether one value is less, equal to, or greater than the other values. Because of this well-defined datatype order, a `range` query can be applied.

We will look at how to apply range queries in the following ways:

- On numeric types
- With score boosting
- On dates

Let's look at the most typical `range` query on a numeric field.

Range query on numeric types

Suppose we are storing products with their prices in an Elasticsearch index and we want to get all products within a range. The following is the query to get products in the range of \$10 to \$20:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "range": {
      "price": {
        "gte": 10,
        "lte": 20
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The response of this query looks like the following:

```
{
  "took": 1,
  "timed_out": false,
  "_shards": {
    "total": 1,
    "successful": 1,
    "failed": 0
  },
  "hits": {
    "total" : {
      "value" : 201,           1
      "relation" : "eq"
    },
    "max_score": 1.0,          2
    "hits": [
      {
        "_index": "amazon_products",
        "_type": "_doc",
        "_id": "AV51K4WiaMctupbz_61a",
        "_score": 1,             3
        "_source": {
          "price": "19.99",       4
          "description": "reel deal casino championship edition (win 98 me nt 2000 xp)",
          "id": "b00070ouja",
          "title": "reel deal casino championship edition",
          "manufacturer": "phantom efx",
          "tags": []
        }
      }
    ]
}
```

Please take a note of the following:

- The `hits.total.value` field in the response shows how many search hits were found. Here, there were `201` search hits.
- The `hits.max_score` field shows the score of the best matching document for the query. Since a `range` query is a structured query without any

importance or relevance, it is executed as a filter. It doesn't do the scoring. All documents have a score of one.

- The `hits.hits` array lists all the actual `hits`. Elasticsearch doesn't return all `201` hits in a single pass by default. It just returns the first 10 records. If you wish to scroll through all results, you can do so easily by issuing multiple queries, as we will see later.
- The `price` field in all search hits would be within the requested range, that is, 10: `<= price <= 20`.

Range query with score boosting

By default, the `range` query assigns a score of `1` to each matching document. What if you are using a `range` query in conjunction with some other query and you want to assign a higher score to the resulting document if it satisfies some criteria? We will look at compound queries such as the `bool` query, where you can combine multiple types of queries. The `range` query allows you to provide a `boost` parameter to enhance its score relative to other query/queries that it is combined with:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "from": 0, "size": 10, "query": { "range": { "price": { "gte": 10, "lte": 20, "boost": 2.2 } } }}
```

All documents that pass the filter will have a score of `2.2` instead of `1` in this query.

Range query on dates

A `range` query can also be applied to date fields since dates are also inherently ordered. You can specify the date format while querying a date range:

```
GET /orders/_search
{
  "query": {
    "range" : {
      "orderDate" : {
        "gte": "01/09/2017",
        "lte": "30/09/2017",
        "format": "dd/MM/yyyy"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The preceding query will filter all the orders that were placed in the month of September 2017.

Elasticsearch allows us to use dates with or without the time in its queries. It also supports the use of special terms, including `now` to denote the current time. For example, the following query queries data from the last 7 days up until now, that is, data from exactly 24 x 7 hours ago till now with a precision of milliseconds:

```
GET /orders/_search
{
  "query": {
    "range" : {
      "orderDate" : {
        "gte": "now-7d",
        "lte": "now"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The ability to use terms such as `now` makes this easier to comprehend.

Elasticsearch supports many date-math operations. As part of its date support, it supports the special keyword `now`. It also supports adding or subtracting time with different units of measurement. It supports single character shorthands such as `y` (year), `m` (month), `w` (week), `d` (day), `h` or `h` (hours), `m` (minutes), and `s` (seconds). For example, `now - 1y` would mean a time of exactly 1 year ago until this moment. It is possible to round time into different units. For example, to round the interval by day, inclusive of both the start and end interval day, use `"gte": "now - 7d/d"` or `"lte": "now/d"`. Specifying `/d` rounds time by days.

The `range` query runs in filter context by default. It doesn't calculate any scores and the score is always set to `1` for all matching documents.

Exists query

Sometimes it is useful to obtain only records that have non-null and non-empty values in a certain field. For example, getting all products that have description fields defined:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "query": { "exists": { "field": "description" } }}
```

The `exists` query turns the query into a filter; in other words, it runs in a filter context. This is similar to the `range` query where the scores don't matter.

*What is a **Filter Context**? When the query is just about filtering our documents, that is, deciding whether to include the document in the result or not, it is sufficient to skip the scoring process. Elasticsearch can skip the scoring process for certain types of queries and assign a uniform score of 1 to each document, ...*

Term query

How would you find all of the products made by a particular manufacturer? We know that the manufacturer field in our data is of the string type. The name of a manufacturer can possibly contain whitespaces. What we are looking for here is an exact search. For example, when we search for `victory multimedia`, we don't want any results that have a manufacturer that contains just `victory` or just `multimedia`. You can use a `term` query to achieve that.

When we defined the `manufacturer` field, we stored it as both `text` and `keyword` fields. When doing an exact match, we have to use the field with the `keyword` type:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "term": {
      "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
    }
  }
}
```

The `term` query is a low-level query in the sense that it doesn't perform any analysis on the term. Also, it directly runs against the inverted index constructed from the mentioned `term` field; in this case, against the `manufacturer.raw` field. By default, the `term` query runs in the query context and hence calculates scores.

The response looks like the following (only the partial response is included):

```
{
  ...
  "hits": {
    "total" : {
      "value" : 3,
      "relation" : "eq"
    },
    "max_score": 5.965414,
    "hits": [
      {
        "_index": "amazon_products",
        "_type": "products",
        "_id": "AV5rbfPNNI_2eZGciIHC",
        "_score": 5.965414,
        ...
    }
  ]
}
```

As we can see, each document is scored by default. To run the `term` query in the filter context without scoring, it needs to be wrapped inside a `constant_score` filter:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "constant_score": {
      "filter": {
        "term": {
          ...
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
        "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
    }
}
}
```

This query will now return results with a score of one for all matching documents. We will look at the `constant_score` query later in the chapter. For now, you can imagine that it turns a scoring query into a non-scoring query. In all queries where we don't need to know how well a document fits the query, we can speed up the query by wrapping it inside `constant_score` with a `filter`. There are also other types of compound queries that can help in converting different types of queries and combining other queries; we will look at them when we examine compound queries.

Searching from the full text

Full-text queries can work on unstructured text fields. These queries are aware of the analysis process. Full-text queries apply the analyzer on the search terms before performing the actual search operation. That determines the right analyzer to be applied by first checking whether a field-level `search_analyzer` is defined, and then by checking whether a field-level analyzer is defined. If analyzers at the field level are not defined, it tries the analyzer defined at the index level.

Full-text queries are thus aware of the analysis process on the underlying field and apply the right analysis process before forming actual search queries. These analysis-aware queries are also called **high-level queries**. Let's understand ...

Match query

A `match` query is the default query for most full-text search requirements. It is one of the high-level queries that is aware of the analyzer used for the underlying field. Let's get an understanding of what this means under the hood.

For example, when you use the `match` query on a `keyword` field, it knows that the underlying field is a `keyword` field, and hence, the search terms are not analyzed at the time of querying:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "match": {
      "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
    }
  }
}
```

The `match` query, in this case, behaves just like a `term` query, which we understand from the previous section. It does not analyze the search term's `victory multimedia` as the separate terms `victory` and `multimedia`. This is because we are querying a `keyword` field, `manufacturer.raw`. In fact, in this particular case, the `match` query gets converted into a `term` query, such as the following:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "term": {
      "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
    }
  }
}
```

The `term` query returns the same scores as the `match` query in this case, as they are both executed against a `keyword` field.

Let's see what happens if you execute a `match` query against a `text` field, which is a real use case for a full-text query:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "match": {
      "manufacturer": "victory multimedia"
    }
  }
}
```

When we execute the `match` query, we expect it to do the following things:

- Search for the terms `victory` and `multimedia` across all documents within the `manufacturer` field.
- Find the best matching documents sorted by score in descending order.
- If both terms appear in the same order, right next to each other in a document, the document should get a higher score than other documents that have both terms but not in the same order, or not next to each other.
- Include documents that have either `victory` or `multimedia` in the results, but give them a lower score.

The `match` query with default parameters does all of these things to find the best matching documents in order, according to their scores (high to low).

By default, when only search terms are specified, this is how the `match` query behaves. It is possible to specify additional options for the `match` query. Let's look at some typical options that you would specify:

- Operator
- Minimum should match
- Fuzziness

Operator

By default, if the search term specified results in multiple terms after applying the analyzer, we need a way to combine the results from individual terms. As we saw in the preceding example, the default behavior of the `match` query is to combine the results using the `or` operator, that is, one of the terms has to be present in the document's field.

This can be changed to use the `and` operator using the following query:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "query": { "match": { "manufacturer": { "query": "victory multimedia", "operator": "and" } } }}
```

In this case, both the terms `victory` and `multimedia` should be present in the document's `manufacturer` field.

Minimum should match

Instead of applying the `and` operator, we can keep the `or` operator and specify at least how many terms should match in a given document for it to be included in the result. This allows for finer-grained control:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "match": {
      "manufacturer": {
        "query": "victory multimedia",
        "minimum_should_match": 2
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The preceding query behaves in a similar way to the `and` operator, as there are two terms in the query and we have specified that, as the minimum, two terms should match.

With `minimum_should_match`, we can specify something similar to at least three of the terms matching in the document.

Fuzziness

With the `fuzziness` parameter, we can turn the `match` query into a `fuzzy` query. This fuzziness is based on the Levenshtein edit distance, to turn one term into another by making a number of edits to the original text. Edits can be insertions, deletions, substitutions, or the transposition of characters in the original term. The `fuzziness` parameter can take one of the following values: `0`, `1`, `2`, or `AUTO`.

For example, the following query has a misspelled word, `victor` instead of `victory`. Since we are using a `fuzziness` of `1`, it will still be able to find all `victory multimedia` records:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "query": { "match": { "manufacturer": { "query": "victor multimedia", "fuzziness": 1 } } }}
```

If we wanted to still allow more ...

Match phrase query

When you want to match a sequence of words, as opposed to separate terms in a document, the `match_phrase` query can be useful.

For example, the following text is present as part of the description for one of the products:

```
real video saltware aquarium on your desktop!
```

What we want are all the products that have this exact sequence of words right next to each other: `real video saltware aquarium`. We can use the `match_phrase` query to achieve it. The `match` query will not work, as it doesn't consider the sequence of terms and their proximity to each other. The `match` query can include all those documents that have any of the terms, even when they are out of order within the document:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "match_phrase": {
      "description": {
        "query": "real video saltware aquarium"
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The response will look like the following:

```
{
  ...
  "hits": {
    "total": 1,
    "max_score": 22.338196,
    "hits": [
      {
        "_index": "amazon_products",
        "_type": "products",
        "_id": "AV5rbfasNI_2eZGciIbg",
        "_score": 22.338196,
        "_source": {
          "price": "19.95",
          "description": "real video saltware aquarium on your desktop! product
information see real fish swimming on your desktop in full-motion video! you'll find
exotic saltwater fish such as sharks angelfish and more! enjoy the beauty and serenity of
a real aquarium at yourdesk",
          "id": "b00004t2un",
          "title": "sales skills 2.0 ages 10+",
          "manufacturer": "victory multimedia",
          "tags": []
        }
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

The `match_phrase` query also supports the `slop` parameter, which allows you to specify an integer: 0, 1, 2, 3, and so on. `slop` relaxes the number of words/terms that can be skipped at the time of querying.

For example, a `slop` value of 1 would allow one missing word in the search text but would still match the document:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "match_phrase": {
      "description": {
        "query": "real video aquarium",
        "slop": 1
      }
    }
  }
}
```

A `slop` value of 1 would allow the user to search with `real video aquarium` OR `real saltware aquarium` and still match the document that contains the exact phrase `real video saltware aquarium`. The default value of `slop` is zero.

Multi match query

The `multi_match` query is an extension of the `match` query. The `multi_match` query allows us to run the `match` query across multiple fields, and also allows many options to calculate the overall score of the documents.

The `multi_match` query can be used with different options. We will look at the following options:

- Querying multiple fields with defaults
- Boosting one or more fields
- With types of `multi_match` queries

Let's look at each option, one by one.

Querying multiple fields with defaults

We want to provide a product search functionality in our web application. When the end user searches for some terms, we want to query both the `title` and `description` fields. This can be done using the `multi_match` query.

The following query will find all of the documents that have the terms `monitor` or `aquarium` in the `title` or the `description` fields:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "multi_match": {
      "query": "monitor aquarium",
      "fields": ["title", "description"]
    }
  }
}
```

This query gives equal importance to both fields. Let's look at how to boost one or more fields.

Boosting one or more fields

In an e-commerce type of web application, the user intends to search for an item, and they might search for some keywords. What if we want the `title` field to be more important than the description? If one or more of the search terms appears in the `title`, it is definitely a more relevant product than the ones that have those values only in the description. It is possible to boost the score of the document if a match is found in a particular field.

Let's make the `title` field three times more important than the `description` field. This can be done by using the following syntax:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "query": { "multi_match": { "query": "monitor aquarium", "fields": ["title^3", "description"] } }}
```

The `multi_match` ...

With types of multi match queries

In this section, we have learned about full-text queries, which are also known as high-level queries. These queries find the best matching documents according to the score. High-level queries internally make use of some term-level queries. In the next section, we will look at how to write compound queries.

Writing compound queries

This class of queries can be used to combine one or more queries to come up with a more complex query. Some compound queries convert scoring queries into non-scoring queries and combine multiple scoring and non-scoring queries.

We will look at the following compound queries:

- Constant score query
- Bool query

Constant score query

Elasticsearch supports querying both structured data and full text. While full-text queries need scoring mechanisms to find the best matching documents, structured searches don't need scoring. The constant score query allows us to convert a scoring query that normally runs in a query context to a non-scoring filter context. The constant score query is a very important tool in your toolbox.

For example, a `term` query is normally run in a query context. This means that when Elasticsearch executes a `term` query, it not only filters documents but also scores all of them:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "term": {
      "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
    }
  }
}
```

Notice the text in bold. This part is the actual `term` query. By default, the `query` JSON element that contains the bold text defines a query context.

The response contains the score for every document. Please see the following partial response:

```
{
  ...
  "hits": {
    "total": 3,
    "max_score": 5.966147,
    "hits": [
      {
        "_index": "amazon_products",
        "_type": "products",
        "_id": "AV5rBfasNI_2eZGciIbg",
        "_score": 5.966147,
        "_source": {
          "price": "19.95",
        }
      ...
    ]
  }
}
```

Here, we just intended to filter the documents, so there was no need to calculate the relevance score of each document.

The original query can be converted to run in a filter context using the following `constant_score` query:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "constant_score": {
```

```
        "filter": {
          "term": {
            "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
          }
        }
      }
    }
```

As you can see, we have wrapped the original highlighted `term` element and its child. It assigns a neutral score of `1` to each document by default. Please note the partial response in the following code:

```
{
  ...
  "hits": {
    "total": 3,
    "max_score": 1,
    "hits": [
      {
        "_index": "amazon_products",
        "_type": "products",
        "_id": "AV5rBfasNI_2eZGciIbg",
        "_score": 1,
        "_source": {
          "price": "19.95",
          "description": ...
        }
      ...
    }
}
```

It is possible to specify a `boost` parameter, which will assign that score instead of the neutral score of `1`:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "constant_score": {
      "filter": {
        "term": {
          "manufacturer.raw": "victory multimedia"
        }
      },
      "boost": 1.2
    }
  }
}
```

What is the benefit of boosting the score of every document in this filter to `1.2`? Well, there is no benefit if this query is used in an isolated way. When this query is combined with other queries, using a query such as a `bool` query, the boosted score becomes important. All the documents that pass this filter will have higher scores compared to other documents that are combined from other queries.

Let's look at the `bool` query next.

Bool query

The `bool` query in Elasticsearch is your Swiss Army knife. It can help you write many types of complex queries. If you are come from an SQL background, you already know how to filter based on multiple `AND` and `OR` conditions in the `WHERE` clause. The `bool` query allows you to combine multiple scoring and non-scoring queries.

Let's first see how to implement simple `AND` and `OR` conjunctions.

A `bool` query has the following sections:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "query": { "bool": { "must": [...], scoring
queries executed in query context "should": [...], scoring queries executed in
query context "filter": {}, non-scoring queries executed in filter context
"must_not": [...] non-scoring queries executed in filter context } }}
```

The queries ...

Combining OR conditions

To find all of the products in the price range `10` to `13`, **OR** manufactured by `valuesoft`:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "constant_score": {
      "filter": {
        "bool": {
          "should": [
            {
              "range": {
                "price": {
                  "gte": 10,
                  "lte": 13
                }
              }
            },
            {
              "term": {
                "manufacturer.raw": {
                  "value": "valuesoft"
                }
              }
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
}
```

Since we want to **OR** the conditions, we have placed them under `should`. Since we are not interested in the scores, we have wrapped our `bool` query inside a `constant_score` query.

Combining AND and OR conditions

Find all products in the price range `10` to `30`, AND manufactured by `valuesoft` OR `pinnacle`:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search{ "query": { "constant_score": { "filter": { "bool": { "must": [ { "range": { "price": { "gte": 10, "lte": 30 } } } ], "should": [ { "term": { "manufacturer.raw": { "value": "valuesoft" } } }, { "term": { "manufacturer.raw": { "value": "pinnacle" } } } ] } } }}
```

Please note that all conditions that need to be ORed together are placed inside the `should` element. The conditions that need to be ANDed together, can be placed inside the `must` element, although it is also possible to put all the conditions to be ANDed in the `filter` element.

Adding NOT conditions

It is possible to add `NOT` conditions, that is, specifically filtering out certain clauses using the `must_not` clause in the `bool` filter. For example, find all of the products in the price range `10` to `20`, but they must not be manufactured by `encore`. The following query will do just that:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "constant_score": {
      "filter": {
        "bool": {
          "must": [
            {
              "range": {
                "price": {
                  "gte": 10,
                  "lte": 20
                }
              }
            }
          ],
          "must_not": [
            {
              "term": {
                "manufacturer.raw": "encore"
              }
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The `bool` query with the `must_not` element is useful for negate any query. To negate or apply a `NOT` filter to the query, it should be wrapped inside the `bool` with `must_not`, as follows:

```
GET /amazon_products/_search
{
  "query": {
    "bool": {
      "must_not": {
        .... original query to be negated ...
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Notice that we do not need to wrap the query in a `constant_score` query when we are only using `must_not` to negate a query. The `must_not` query is always executed in a filter context.

This concludes our understanding of the different types of compound queries. There are more compound queries supported by Elasticsearch. They include

the following:

- Dis Max query
- Function Score query
- Boosting query
- Indices query

Besides the full-text search capabilities of Elasticsearch, we can also model relationships within Elasticsearch. Due to the flat structure of documents, we can easily model a one-to-one type of relationship within a document. Let's see how to model a one-to-many type of relationship in Elasticsearch in the next section.

Modeling relationships

We saw in the previous sections how to model and store products and run various queries on products. The product data had partly structured data and partly textual data. What if we also had detailed features of the products available to us? We may have many different types of products and each product may have completely different types of detailed features. For example, for products that fall into the **Laptops** category, we would have features such as screen size, processor type, and processor clock speed.

At the same time, products in the **Automobile GPS Systems** category may have features such as screen size, whether GPS can speak street names, or whether it has free lifetime map updates available.

Because we may have ...

has_child query

If you want to get products based on some condition on the features, you can use `has_child` queries.

The outline of a `has_child` query is as follows:

```
GET <index>/_search
{
  "query": {
    "has_child": {
      "type": <the child type against which to run the following query>,
      "query": {
        <any elasticsearch query like term, bool, query_string to be run against the
child type>
      }
    }
  }
}
```

As you can see in the preceding code, we mainly need to specify only two things:

1. The type of the child against which to execute the query
2. The actual query to be run against the child to get their parents

Let's learn about this through an example. We want to get all of the products where `processor_series` is `Core i7` from the example dataset that we loaded:

```
GET amazon_products_with_features/_search
{
  "query": {
    "has_child": {
      "type": "feature", 1
      "query": {
        "bool": {
          "must": [
            {
              "term": { 3
                "feature_key": {
                  "value": "processor_series"
                }
              }
            },
            {
              "term": { 4
                "feature_value": {
                  "value": "Core i7"
                }
              }
            }
          ]
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Please note the following points about the query:

- The `has_child` query is used to query based on the child type `feature`.
- The actual query to be used on the child type is specified under the `query` element. We can use any query supported by Elasticsearch under this `query` element. Whichever query is used will be run against the child type that we specified. We are using a `bool` query because we want to filter by all features where `feature_key = processor_series AND feature_value = Core i7`.
- We have used a `bool` query, as explained in the previous point. The first of the conditions is included as a `term` query here under the `must` clause. This `term` query checks that we filter for `feature_key = processor_series`.
- This is the second condition under the `must` clause, in which the `term` query checks that we filter for `feature_value = Core i5`.

The result of this `has_child` query is that we get back all the products that satisfy the query mentioned under the `has_child` element executed against all the features. The response should look like the following:

```
{  
    "took" : 1,  
    "timed_out" : false,  
    "_shards" : {  
        "total" : 1,  
        "successful" : 1,  
        "skipped" : 0,  
        "failed" : 0  
    },  
    "hits" : {  
        "total" : {  
            "value" : 1,  
            "relation" : "eq"  
        },  
        "max_score" : 1.0,  
        "hits" : [  
            {  
                "_index" : "amazon_products_with_features",  
                "_type" : "doc",  
                "_id" : "c0002",  
                "_score" : 1.0,  
                "_source" : {  
                    "description" : "The Acer G9-593-77WF Predator 15 Notebook comes with a 15.6 inch IPS display that makes each image and video appear sharp and crisp. The laptop has Intel Core i7-6700HQ 2.60 GHz processor with NVIDIA Geforce GTX 1070 graphics and 16 GB DDR4 SDRAM that gives lag free experience. The laptop comes with 1 TB HDD along with 256 GB SSD which makes all essential data and entertainment files handy.",  
                    "price" : "1899.99",  
                    "id" : "c0002",  
                    "title" : "Acer Predator 15 G9-593-77WF Notebook",  
                    "product_or_feature" : "product",  
                    "manufacturer" : "Acer"  
                }  
            }  
        ]  
    }  
}
```

Next, let's look at another type of query that can be utilized when we have used the `join` type in Elasticsearch.

has_parent query

In the previous type of query, `has_child`, we wanted to get records of the `parent_type` query based on a query that we executed against the child type. The `has_parent` query is useful for exactly the opposite purpose, that is, when we want to get all child type of records based on a query executed against the `parent_type`. Let's learn about this through an example.

We want to get all the features of a specific product that has the product id = `c0003`. We can use a `has_parent` query as follows:

```
1 GET amazon_products_with_features/_search{ "query": { "has_parent": {  
2     "parent_type": "product",  
         "ids": { "values": ["c0001"] } } } }
```

Please note the following points, marked with the numbers in the query:

1. Under the `has_parent` ...

parent_id query

In the `has_parent` query example, we already knew the ID of the parent document. There is actually a handier query to get all children documents if we know the ID of the parent document.

You guessed correctly; it is the `parent_id` query, where we obtain all children using the parent's ID:

```
GET /amazon_products_with_features/_search
{
  "query": {
    "parent_id": {
      "type": "feature",
      "id": "c0001"
    }
  }
}
```

The response of this query will be exactly the same as the `has_parent` query we wrote earlier. The key difference between the `has_parent` query and the `parent_id` query is that the former is used to get all children based on an arbitrary Elasticsearch query executed against the `parent_type` query, whereas the latter (`parent_id` query) is useful if you know the ID.

Covering all types of queries is beyond the scope of this book. Having learned different types of full-text queries, compound queries, and relationship queries in depth, you are now well equipped to try other queries that aren't covered here. Please refer to the Elasticsearch reference documentation to learn about their usage.

Summary

In this chapter, we took a deep dive into the search capabilities of Elasticsearch. We looked at the role of analyzers and the anatomy of an analyzer, saw how to use some of the built-in analyzers that come with Elasticsearch, and saw how to create custom analyzers. Along with a solid background on analyzers, we learned about two main types of queries—term-level queries and full-text queries. We also learned how to compose different queries in more complex queries using one of the compound queries.

This chapter provided you with sound knowledge to get a foothold on querying Elasticsearch data. There are many more types of queries supported by Elasticsearch, but we have covered the most essential ones. This should help you get started ...

Analytics with Elasticsearch

On our journey of learning about Elastic Stack 7.0, we have gained a strong understanding of Elasticsearch. We learned about the strong foundations of Elasticsearch in the previous two chapters and gained an in-depth understanding of its search use cases.

The underlying technology, Apache Lucene, was originally developed for text search use cases. Due to innovations in Apache Lucene and additional innovations in Elasticsearch, it has also emerged as a very powerful analytics engine. In this chapter, we will look at how Elasticsearch can serve as our analytics engine. We will cover the following topics:

- The basics of aggregations
- Preparing data for analysis
- Metric aggregations
- Bucket aggregations
- Pipeline aggregations

We will learn about all of this by using a real-world dataset. Let's start by looking at the basics of aggregations.

The basics of aggregations

In contrast to searching, analytics deals with the bigger picture. Searching addresses the need for zooming in to a few records, whereas analytics address the need for zooming out and slicing the data in different ways.

While learning about searching, we used the following API:

```
POST /<index_name>/_search{ "query": { ... type of query ... }}
```

All aggregation queries take a common form. Let's go over the structure.

The aggregations, or `aggs`, element allows us to aggregate data. All aggregation requests take the following form:

```
POST /<index_name>/_search{ "aggs": { ... type of aggregation ... }, "query": { ... type of query ... }, //optional query part "size": 0 //size typically set to 0}
```

The `aggs` element should ...

Bucket aggregations

Bucket aggregations segment the data in question (defined by the query context) into various buckets that are identified by the buckets key.

Bucket aggregation evaluates each document in the context by deciding which bucket it falls into. At the end, bucket aggregation has a set of distinct buckets with their respective bucket keys and documents that fall into those buckets.

For people who are coming from an SQL background, a query that has `GROUP BY`, such as the following query, does the following with bucket aggregations:

```
SELECT column1, count(*) FROM table1 GROUP BY column1;
```

This query divides the table by the different values of `column 1` and returns a count of documents within each value of `column 1`. This is an example of bucket aggregation. There are many different types of bucket aggregation supported by Elasticsearch, all of which we will go through in this chapter.

Bucket aggregations can be present on the top or outermost level in an aggregation query. Bucket aggregations can also be nested inside other bucket aggregations.

Metric aggregations

Metric aggregations work on numerical fields. They compute the aggregate value of a numerical field in the given context. For example, let's suppose that we have a table containing the results of a student's examination. Each record contains marks obtained by the student. A metric aggregation can compute different aggregates of that numerical score column. Some examples are sum, average, minimum, maximum, and so on.

In SQL terms, the following query gives a rough analogy of what a metric aggregation may do:

```
SELECT avg(score) FROM results;
```

This query computes the average score in the given context. Here, the context is the whole table, that is, all students.

Metric aggregation can be placed on the top or outermost level ...

Matrix aggregations

Matrix aggregations were introduced with Elasticsearch version 5.0. Matrix aggregations work on multiple fields and compute matrices across all the documents within the query context.

Matrix aggregations can be nested inside bucket aggregations, but bucket aggregations cannot be nested inside of matrix aggregations. This is still a relatively new feature. Coverage of matrix aggregations is not within the scope of this book.

Pipeline aggregations

Pipeline aggregations are higher order aggregations that can aggregate the output of other aggregations. These are useful for computing something, such as derivatives. We will look at some pipeline aggregations later in this chapter.

This was an overview about the different types of aggregations supported by Elasticsearch at a high level. Pipeline aggregations and matrix aggregations are relatively new and have fewer use cases compared to metric and bucket aggregations. We will look at metric and bucket aggregations in greater depth later in this chapter.

In the next section, we will load and prepare data so that we can look at these aggregations in more detail.

Preparing data for analysis

We will consider an example of network traffic data generated from Wi-Fi routers. Throughout this chapter, we will analyze the data from this example. It is important to understand what the records in the underlying system look like, and what they represent.

We will cover the following topics while we prepare and load the data into the local Elasticsearch instance:

- Understanding the structure of the data
- Loading the data using Logstash

Understanding the structure of the data

The following diagram depicts the design of the system, in order to help you gain a better understanding of the problem and the structure of the data that's collected:

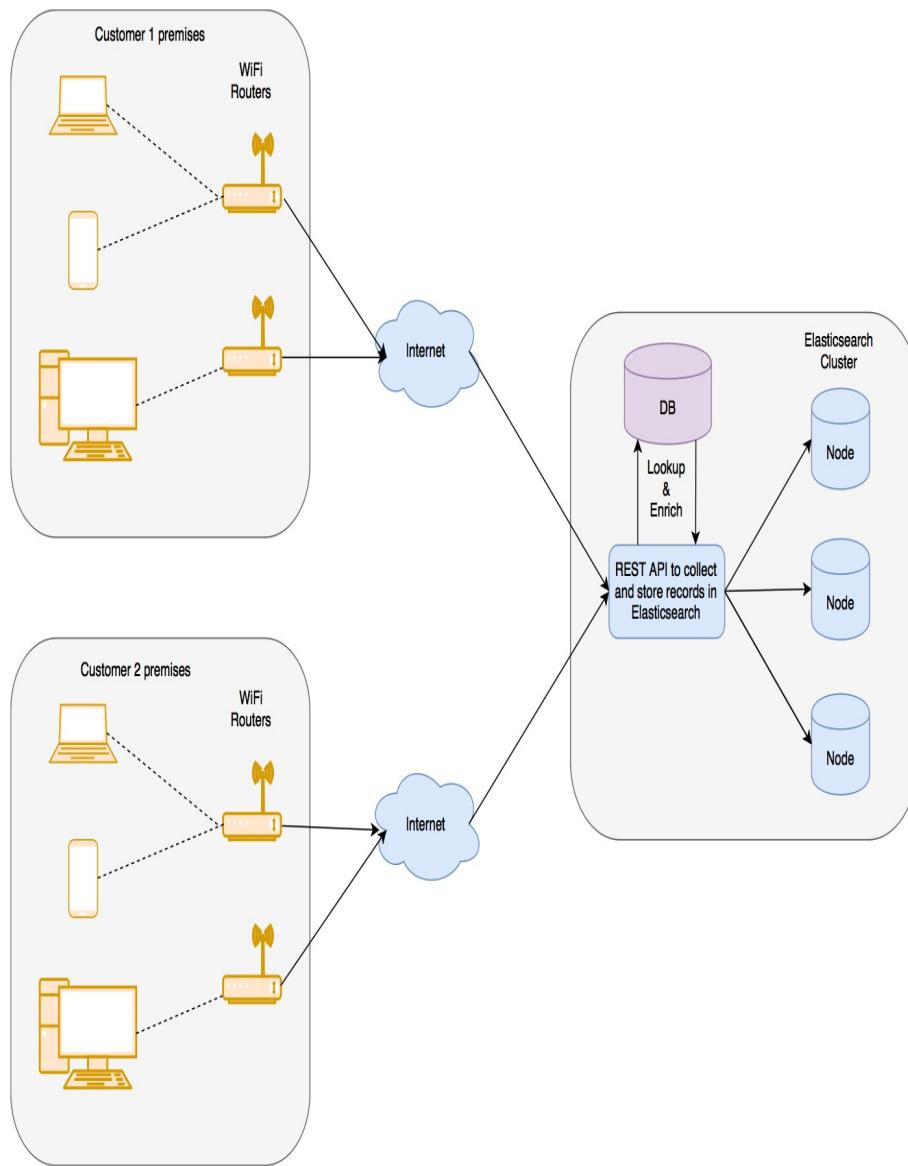


Fig 4.1: Network traffic and bandwidth usage data for Wi-Fi traffic and storage in Elasticsearch

The data is collected by the system with the following objectives:

- On the left half of the diagram, there are multiple squares,

representing one customer's premises as well as the Wi-Fi routers deployed on that site, along with all of the devices connected to those Wi-Fi routers. The connected devices include laptops, mobile devices, desktop ...

Loading the data using Logstash

To import the data, please follow the instructions in this book's accompanying source code repository on GitHub, at <https://github.com/pranav-shukla/learningelasticsearch>. This can be found in the v7.0 branch.

Please clone or download the repository from GitHub. The instructions for importing data are at the following path within the project: `chapter-04/README.md`. Once you have cloned the repository, check out the v7.0 branch.

Once you have imported the data, verify that your data has been imported with the following query:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search
{
  "query": {
    "match_all": {}
  },
  "size": 1
}
```

You should see a response similar to the following:

```
{
...
"hits":
{
  "total" : {
    "value" : 10000,
    "relation" : "gte"
  },
  "max_score": 1,
  "hits": [
    {
      "_index": "bigginsight",
      "_type": "_doc",
      "_id": "AV7Sy4FofN33RKOL1VH0",
      "_score": 1,
      "_source": {
        "inactiveMs": 1316,
        "bandwidth": 51.03333333333333,
        "signalStrength": -58,
        "accessPointId": "AP-1D7F0",
        "usage": 3062,
        "downloadCurrent": 39.93333333333333,
        "uploadCurrent": 11.1,
        "mac": "d2:a1:74:28:c0:5a",
        "tags": [],
        "@timestamp": "2017-09-30T12:38:25.867Z",
        "application": "Dropbox",
        "downloadTotal": 2396,
        "@version": "1",
        "networkId": "Guest",
        "location": "23.102900,72.595611",
        "time": 1506164775655,
        "band": "2.4 GHz",
        "department": "HR",
        "category": "File Sharing",
        "uploadTotal": 666,
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```
        "username": "Cheryl Stokes",
        "customer": "Microsoft"
    }
}
]
```

Now that we have the data that we want, we can get started and learn about different types of aggregations from the data that we just loaded. You can find all the queries that are used in this chapter in the accompanying source code in the GitHub repository, at the location [chapter-04/queries.txt](#). The queries can be run directly in Kibana Dev Tools, as we have seen previously in this book.

One thing to note here is the `hits.total` in the response. It has values of `10,000` and `"relation"="gte"`. There are actually 242,835 documents in the index, all of which we have created. Before version 7.0 was released, `hits.total` always used to represent the actual count of documents that matched the query criteria. With Elasticsearch version 7.0, `hits.total` is not calculated if the `hits` are greater than `10,000`. This is to avoid the unnecessary overhead of calculating the exact matching documents for the given query. We can force the calculation of exact `hits` by passing `track_total_hits=true` as a request parameter.

Metric aggregations

Metric aggregations work with numerical data, computing one or more aggregate metrics within the given context. The context can be a query, filter, or no query, to include the whole index/type. Metric aggregations can also be nested inside other bucket aggregations. In this case, these metrics will be computed for each bucket in the bucket aggregations.

We will start with simple metric aggregations, without nesting them inside bucket aggregations. When we learn about bucket aggregations later in this chapter, we will also learn how to use metric aggregations inside bucket aggregations.

In this section, we will go over the following metric aggregations:

- Sum, average, min, and max aggregations
- Stats and extended stats aggregations ...

Sum, average, min, and max aggregations

Finding the sum of a field, the minimum value for a field, the maximum value for a field, or an average, are very common operations. For people who are familiar with SQL, the query to find the sum is as follows:

```
SELECT sum(downloadTotal) FROM usageReport;
```

The preceding query will calculate the sum of the `downloadTotal` field across all the records in the table. This requires going through all the records of the table or all the records in the given context and adding the values of the given fields.

In Elasticsearch, a similar query can be written using the sum aggregation. Let's look at the sum aggregation first.

Sum aggregation

Here is how to write a simple sum aggregation:

```
1 GET bigginsight/_search?track_total_hits=true{ "aggregations": {  
2   "download_sum": {  
3     "sum": {  
4       "field": "downloadTotal"  
5     }  
6   },  
7   "size": 0  
8 }
```

The key parts from the preceding code are explained in the following points:

- The `aggs` or `aggregations` element at the top level should wrap any aggregation.
- Give a name to the aggregation; here, we are doing the sum aggregation on the `downloadTotal` field, and hence, the name we chose was `download_sum`. You can name it anything. This field will be useful while looking up this particular aggregation's result in the response.
- We are doing a sum aggregation; hence, we have the `sum` element.
- We want to do `terms` aggregation on the `downloadTotal` ...

Average aggregation

The average aggregation finds an average across all the documents in the querying context:

```
GET bigginsight/_search
{
  "aggregations": {
    "download_average": {           1
      "avg": {                     2
        "field": "downloadTotal"
      }
    },
    "size": 0
}
```

The only notable differences from the sum aggregation are as follows:

- We chose a different name, `download_average`, to make it apparent that the aggregation is trying to compute the average.
- The type of aggregation that we are doing is `avg`, instead of the `sum` aggregation that we were doing earlier.

The response structure is identical, but the value field will now represent the average of the requested field.

The min and max aggregations are exactly the same.

Min aggregation

The min aggregation is how we will find the minimum value of the `downloadTotal` field in the entire index/type:

```
GET bigginsight/_search{ "aggregations": {  
  "min": {  
    "field": "downloadTotal"  
  }  
}, "size": 0  
} "download_min": {  
  "field": "downloadTotal"  
}
```

Now, let's take a look at max aggregation.

Max aggregation

Here's how we will find the maximum value of the `downloadTotal` field in the entire index/type:

```
GET bigginsight/_search
{
  "aggregations": {
    "download_max": {
      "max": {
        "field": "downloadTotal"
      }
    },
    "size": 0
}
```

These aggregations were really simple. Now, let's look at some more advanced stats and extended stats aggregations.

Stats and extended stats aggregations

These aggregations compute some common statistics in a single request, without having to issue multiple requests. This saves resources on the Elasticsearch side, as well, because the statistics are computed in a single pass, rather than being requested multiple times. The client code also becomes simpler if you are interested in more than one of these statistics. Let's look at stats aggregation first.

Stats aggregation

Stats aggregation computes the sum, average, min, max, and count of documents in a single pass:

```
GET bigginsight/_search
{
  "aggregations": {
    "download_stats": {
      "stats": {
        "field": "downloadTotal"
      }
    }
  },
  "size": 0
}
```

The structure of the stats request is the same as the other metric aggregations we have looked at so far, so nothing special is going on here.

The response should look like the following:

```
{
  "took": 4,
  ...,
  "hits": {
    "total" : {
      "value" : 10000,
      "relation" : "gte"
    },
    "max_score": 0,
    "hits": []
  },
  "aggregations": {
    "download_stats": {
      "count": 242835,
      "min": 0,
      "max": 241213,
      "avg": 9049.102065188297,
      "sum": 2197438700
    }
  }
}
```

As you can see, the response with the `download_stats` element contains `count`, `min`, `max`, `average`, and `sum`; everything is included in the same response. This is very handy, as it reduces the overhead of multiple requests, and also simplifies the client code.

Let's look at the extended stats aggregation.

Extended stats aggregation

The `extended stats` aggregation returns a few more statistics in addition to the ones returned by the `stats` aggregation:

```
GET bigginsight/_search{ "aggregations": { "download_estats": { "extended_stats": { "field": "downloadTotal" } }, "size": 0}
```

The response looks like the following:

```
{ "took": 15, "timed_out": false, ..., "hits": { "total": { "value": 10000, "relation": "gte" }, "max_score": 0, "hits": [] }, "aggregations": { "download_estats": { "count": 242835, "min": 0, "max": 241213, "avg": 9049.102065188297, "sum": 2197438700, "sum_of_squares": 133545882701698, "variance": 468058704.9782911, "std_deviation": 21634.664429528162, "std_deviation_bounds": { "upper": 52318.43092424462, "lower": -34220.22679386803 } ... }
```

Cardinality aggregation

Finding the count of unique elements can be done with the cardinality aggregation. It is similar to finding the result of a query such as the following:

```
select count(*) from (select distinct username from usageReport) u;
```

Finding the cardinality, or the number of unique values, for a specific field is a very common requirement. If you have a click stream from the different visitors on your website, you may want to find out how many unique visitors you had in a given day, week, or month.

Let's look at how we can find out the count of unique users for which we have network traffic data:

```
GET bigginsight/_search
{
  "aggregations": {
    "unique_visitors": {
      "cardinality": {
        "field": "username"
      }
    }
  },
  "size": 0
}
```

The cardinality aggregation response is just like the other metric aggregations:

```
{
  "took": 110,
  ...
  "hits": {
    "total": {
      "value": 10000,
      "relation": "gte"
    },
    "max_score": 0,
    "hits": []
  },
  "aggregations": {
    "unique_visitors": {
      "value": 79
    }
  }
}
```

Now that we have covered the simplest forms of aggregations, we can look at some of the bucket aggregations.

Bucket aggregations

Bucket aggregations are useful to analyze how the whole relates to its parts, so that we can gain better insight on the data. They help in segmenting the data into smaller parts. Each type of bucket aggregation slices the data into different segments, or buckets. Bucket aggregations are the most common type of aggregation used in any analysis process.

In this section, we will cover the following topics, keeping the network traffic data example at the center:

- Bucketing on string data
- Bucketing on numerical data
- Aggregating filtered data
- Nesting aggregations
- Bucketing on custom conditions
- Bucketing on date/time data
- Bucketing on geospatial data

Bucketing on string data

Sometimes, we may need to bucket the data, or segment the data, based on a field that has a `string` datatype, which is typically `keyword` typed fields in Elasticsearch. This is very common. Some examples of scenarios in which you may want to segment the data by a string typed field are as follows:

- Segmenting the network traffic data per department
- Segmenting the network traffic data per user
- Segmenting the network traffic data per application, or per category

The most common way to bucket or segment your string typed data is by using terms aggregation. Let's take a look at terms aggregation.

Terms aggregation

Terms aggregation is probably the most widely used aggregation. It is useful for segmenting or grouping the data by a given field's distinct values. Suppose that, in the network traffic data example that we have loaded, we have the following question:

Which are the top categories, that is, categories that are surfed the most by users?

We are interested in the most surfed categories – not in terms of the bandwidth used, but just in terms of counts (record counts). In a relational database, we could write a query like the following:

```
SELECT category, count(*) FROM usageReport GROUP BY category ORDER BY count(*) DESC;
```

The Elasticsearch aggregation query, which would do a similar job, can be written as follows:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search ...
```

Bucketing on numerical data

Another common scenario is when we want to segment or slice the data into various buckets, based on a numerical field. For example, we may want to slice the product data by different price ranges, such as up to \$10, \$10 to \$50, \$50 to \$100, and so on. You may want to segment the data by age group, employee count, and so on.

We will look at the following aggregations in this section:

- Histogram aggregation
- Range aggregation

Histogram aggregation

Histogram aggregation can slice the data into different buckets based on one numerical field. The range of each slice, also called the interval, can be specified in the input of the query.

Here, we have some records of network traffic usage data. The `usage` field tells us about the number of bytes that are used for uploading or downloading data. Let's try to divide or slice all the data based on the usage:

```
POST /bigginsight/_search?size=0{ "aggs": { "by_usage": { "histogram": { "field": "usage", "interval": 1000 } } }}
```

The preceding aggregation query will slice all the data into the following buckets:

- **0 to 999:** All records that have usage ≥ 0 and $< 1,000$ will fall into this bucket
- **1,000 to 1,999:** All records that have ...

Range aggregation

What if we don't want all the buckets to have the same interval? It's possible to create unequal sized buckets by using the `range` aggregation.

The following `range` aggregation slices the data into three buckets: up to 1 KB, 1 KB to 100 KB, and 100 KB or more. Notice that we can specify `from` and `to` in the ranges. Both `from` and `to` are optional in the range. If only `to` is specified, that bucket includes all the documents up to the specified value in that bucket. The `to` value is exclusive, and is not included in the current bucket's range:

```
POST /bigginsight/_search?size=0
{
  "aggs": {
    "by_usage": {
      "range": {
        "field": "usage",
        "ranges": [
          { "to": 1024 },
          { "from": 1024, "to": 102400 },
          { "from": 102400 }
        ]
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The response of this request will look similar to the following:

```
{
  ...
  "aggregations": {
    "by_usage": {
      "buckets": [
        {
          "key": "*-1024.0",
          "to": 1024,
          "doc_count": 31324
        },
        {
          "key": "1024.0-102400.0",
          "from": 1024,
          "to": 102400,
          "doc_count": 207498
        },
        {
          "key": "102400.0-*",
          "from": 102400,
          "doc_count": 4013
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

It is possible to specify custom `key` labels for the range buckets, as follows:

```
POST /bigginsight/_search?size=0
```

```
{  
  "aggs": {  
    "by_usage": {  
      "range": {  
        "field": "usage",  
        "ranges": [  
          { "key": "Upto 1 kb", "to": 1024 },  
          { "key": "1 kb to 100 kb", "from": 1024, "to": 102400 },  
          { "key": "100 kb and more", "from": 102400 }  
        ]  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}
```

The resulting buckets will have the keys set with each bucket. This is helpful for looking up the relevant bucket from the response without iterating through all the buckets.

There are more aggregations available for numerical data, but covering all of these aggregations is beyond the scope of this book.

Next, we will look at a couple of important concepts related to bucket aggregation and aggregations in general.

Aggregations on filtered data

In our quest to learn about different bucket aggregations, let's take a very short detour to understand how to apply aggregations on filtered data. So far, we have been applying all of our aggregations on all the data of the given index/type. In the real world, you will almost always need to apply some filters before applying aggregations (either metric or bucket aggregations).

Let's revisit the example that we looked at in the *Terms aggregation* section. We found out the top categories in the whole index and type. Now, what we want to do is find the top category for a specific customer, not for all of the customers:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search?size=0&track_total_hits=true{ "query": { "term": { "customer": "Linkedin" ... }}
```

Nesting aggregations

Bucket aggregations split the context into one or more buckets. We can restrict the context of the aggregation by specifying the query element, as we saw in the previous section.

When a metric aggregation is nested inside a bucket aggregation, the metric aggregation is computed within each bucket. Let's go over this by considering the following question, which we may want to get an answer for:

What is the total bandwidth consumed by each user, or a specific customer, on a given day?

We have to take the following steps:

1. First, filter the overall data for the given customer and for the given day. This can be done using a global query element of the `bool` type.
2. Once we have the filtered data, we will want to create some buckets per user.
3. Once we have one bucket for each user, we will want to compute the sum metric aggregation on the total usage field (which includes upload and download).

The following query does exactly this. Please refer to the annotated numbers, which correspond to the three main objectives of the the following query:

```
GET /bigginsight/usageReport/_search?size=0
{
  "query": {
    "bool": {
      "must": [
        {"term": {"customer": "Linkedin"}},
        {"range": {"time": {"gte": 1506257800000, "lte": 1506314200000}}]
    }
  },
  "aggs": {
    "by_users": {
      "terms": {
        "field": "username"
      },
      "aggs": {
        "total_usage": {
          "sum": { "field": "usage" }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The thing to notice here is that the top level `by_users` aggregation, which is a `terms` aggregation, contains another `aggs` element with the `total_usage` metric

aggregation inside it.

The response should look like the following:

```
{  
  ...  
  "aggregations": {  
    "by_users": {  
      "doc_count_error_upper_bound": 0,  
      "sum_other_doc_count": 453,  
      "buckets": [  
        {  
          "key": "Jay May",  
          "doc_count": 2170,  
          "total_usage": {  
            "value": 6516943  
          }  
        },  
        {  
          "key": "Guadalupe Rice",  
          "doc_count": 2157,  
          "total_usage": {  
            "value": 6492653  
          }  
        },  
        ...  
      ]  
    }  
  }  
}
```

As you can see, each of the `terms` aggregation buckets contains a `total_usage` child, which has the metric aggregation value. The buckets are sorted by the number of documents in each bucket, in descending order. It is possible to change the order of buckets by specifying the `order` parameter within the bucket aggregation.

Please see the following partial query, which has been modified to sort the buckets in descending order of the `total_usage` metric:

```
GET /bigginsight/usageReport/_search  
{  
  ...  
  "aggs": {  
    "by_users": {  
      "terms": {  
        "field": "username",  
        "order": { "total_usage": "desc"}  
      },  
      "aggs": {  
        ...  
      }  
    }  
  }  
}
```

The highlighted order clause sorts the buckets using the `total_usage` nested aggregation, in descending order.

Bucket aggregations can be nested inside other bucket aggregations. Let's consider this by getting an answer to the following question:

Who are the top two users in each department, given the total bandwidth consumed by each user?

The following query will help us get that answer:

```

GET /bigginsight/usageReport/_search?size=0
{
  "query": {
    "bool": {
      "must": [
        {"term": {"customer": "Linkedin"}},
        {"range": {"time": {"gte": 1506257800000, "lte": 1506314200000}}]
    }
  },
  "aggs": {
    "by_departments": {
      "terms": { "field": "department" },
      "ags": {
        "by_users": {
          "terms": {
            "field": "username",
            "size": 2,
            "order": { "total_usage": "desc"}},
          "ags": {
            "total_usage": {"sum": { "field": "usage" }}}
        }
      }
    }
  }
}

```

Please see the following explanation of the annotated numbers in the query:

- This is a query that filters the specific customer and time range.
- The top-level terms aggregation to get a bucket for each department.
- The second-level terms aggregation to get the top two users (note that `size = 2`) within each bucket.
- The metric aggregation that has the sum of usage within its parent bucket. The immediate parent bucket of the `total_usage` aggregation is the `by_users` aggregation, which causes the sum of usage to be calculated for each user.

This is how we can nest bucket and metric aggregations to answer complex questions in a very fast and efficient way, regarding big data stored in Elasticsearch.

Bucketing on custom conditions

Sometimes, what we want is more control over how the buckets are created. The aggregations that we have looked at so far have dealt with a single type of field. If the given field that we want to slice data from is of the `string` type, we generally use the `terms` aggregation. If the field is of the `numerical` type, we have a few choices, including histogram, range aggregation, and others, to slice the data into different segments.

The following aggregations allow us to create one or more buckets, based on the queries/filters that we choose:

- Filter aggregation
- Filters aggregation

Let's look at them, one by one.

Filter aggregation

Why would you want to use filter aggregation? Filter aggregation allows you to create a single bucket using any arbitrary filter and computes the metrics within that bucket.

For example, if we wanted to create a bucket of all the records for the `chat` category, we could use a term filter. Here, we want to create a bucket of all records that have `category = Chat`:

```
POST /bigginsight/_search?size=0
{
  "aggs": {
    "chat": {
      "filter": {
        "term": {
          "category": "Chat"
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The response should look like the following:

```
{
  "took": 4,
  ...,
  "hits": {
    "total" : {
      "value" : 10000,
      "relation" : "gte"
    },
    "max_score": 0,
    "hits": []
  },
  " aggregations": {
    "chat": {
      "doc_count": 52277
    }
  }
}
```

As you can see, the `aggregations` element contains just one item, corresponding to the `chat` category. It has 52277 documents. This response can be seen as a subset of the `terms` aggregation response, which contained all the categories, apart from `chat`.

Let's look at filters aggregation next, which allows you to bucket on more than one custom filter.

Filters aggregation

With filters aggregation, you can create multiple buckets, each with its own specified filter that will cause the documents satisfying that filter to fall into the related bucket. Let's look at an example.

Suppose that we want to create multiple buckets to understand how much of the network traffic was caused by the `chat` category. At the same time, we want to understand how much of it was caused by the Skype application, versus other applications in the `chat` category. This can be achieved by using filters aggregation, as it allows us to write arbitrary filters to create buckets:

```
GET bigginsight/_search?size=0{ "aggs": { "messages": { "filters": { "filters": { "chat": { "match": { "category": "Chat" }}, "skype": { "match": ... }}
```

Bucketing on date/time data

So far, you have seen how to bucket (or segment, or slice) your data on different types of columns/fields. The analysis of data across the time dimension is another very common requirement. We may have questions such as the following, which require the aggregation of data on the time dimension:

- How are sales volumes growing over a period of time?
- How is profit changing from month to month?

In the context of the network traffic example that we are going through, the following questions can be answered through time series analysis of the data:

- How are the bandwidth requirements changing for my organization over a period of time?
- Which are the top applications, over a period of time, in terms of bandwidth usage?

Elasticsearch has a very powerful Date Histogram aggregation that can answer questions like these. Let's look at how we can get answers to these questions.

Date Histogram aggregation

Using Date Histogram aggregation, we will see how we can create buckets on a date field. In the process, we will go through the following stages:

- Creating buckets across time periods
- Using a different time zone
- Computing other metrics within sliced time intervals
- Focusing on a specific day and changing intervals

Creating buckets across time periods

The following query will slice the data into intervals of one day. Just like how we were able to create buckets on different values of strings, the following query will create buckets on different values of time, grouped by one-day intervals:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search?size=0          1
{
  "aggs": {
    "counts_over_time": {
      "date_histogram": {
        "field": "time",
        "interval": "1d"           2
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The key points from the preceding code are explained as follows:

- We have specified `size=0` as a request parameter, instead of specifying it in the request body.
- We are using the `date_histogram` aggregation.
- We want to slice the data by day; that's why we specify the `interval` for slicing the data as `1d` (for one day). Intervals can take values like `1d` (one day), `1h` (one hour), `4h` (four hours), `30m` (30 minutes), and so on. This gives tremendous flexibility when specifying a dynamic criteria.

The response to the request should look like the following:

```
{
  ...
  "aggregations": {
    "counts_over_time": {
      "buckets": [
        {
          "key_as_string": "2017-09-23T00:00:00.000Z",
          "key": 1506124800000,
          "doc_count": 62493
        },
        {
          "key_as_string": "2017-09-24T00:00:00.000Z",
          "key": 1506211200000,
          "doc_count": 5312
        },
        {
          "key_as_string": "2017-09-25T00:00:00.000Z",
          "key": 1506297600000,
          "doc_count": 175030
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

```
        }  
    ]  
    }  
}
```

As you can see, the simulated data that we have in our index is only for a three-day period. The returned buckets contain keys in two forms, `key` and `key_as_string`. The `key` field is in milliseconds since the epoch (January 1st 1970), and `key_as_string` is the beginning of the time interval in UTC. In our case, we have chosen the interval of one day. The first bucket with the `2017-09-23T00:00:00.000Z` key is the bucket that has documents between September 23, 2017 UTC, and September 24, 2017 UTC.

Using a different time zone

We actually want to slice the data by the IST time zone, rather than slicing it according to the UTC time zone. This is possible by specifying the `time_zone` parameter. We need to separate the offset of the required time zone from the UTC time zone. In this case, we need to provide `+05:30` as the offset, since IST is 5 hours and 30 minutes ahead of UTC:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search?size=0{ "aggs": { "counts_over_time": { "date_histogram": { "field": "time", "interval": "1d", "time_zone": "+05:30" } } }}
```

The response now looks like the following:

```
{ ..., "aggregations": { "counts_over_time": { "buckets": [ { "key_as_string": "2017-09-23T00:00:00.000+05:30", "key": 1506105000000, "doc_count": 62493 }, { "key_as_string": ... }}
```

Computing other metrics within sliced time intervals

So far, we have just sliced the data across time by using the Date Histogram to create the buckets on the time field. This gave us the document counts in each bucket. Next, we will try to answer the following question:

What is the day-wise total bandwidth usage for a given customer?

The following query will provide us with an answer for this:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search?size=0
{
  "query": { "term": {"customer": "Linkedin"} },
  "aggs": {
    "counts_over_time": {
      "date_histogram": {
        "field": "time",
        "interval": "1d",
        "time_zone": "+05:30"
      },
      "aggs": {
        "total_bandwidth": {
          "sum": { "field": "usage" }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

We added a term filter to consider only one customer's data. Within the `date_histogram` aggregation, we nested another metric aggregation, that is, sum aggregation, to count the sum of the usage field within each bucket. This is how we will get the total data consumed each day. The following is the shortened response to the query:

```
{
  ...
  "aggregations": {
    "counts_over_time": {
      "buckets": [
        {
          "key_as_string": "2017-09-23T00:00:00.000+05:30",
          "key": 1506105000000,
          "doc_count": 18892,
          "total_bandwidth": {
            "value": 265574303
          }
        },
        ...
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

Focusing on a specific day and changing intervals

Next, we will look at how to focus on a specific day by filtering the data for the other time periods and changing the value of the interval to a smaller value. We are trying to get an hourly breakdown of data usage for September 25, 2017.

What we are doing is also called drilling down in the data. Often, the result of the previous query is displayed as a line chart, with time on the *x* axis and data used on the *y* axis. If we want to zoom in on a specific day from that line chart, the following query can be useful:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search?size=0{ "query": { "bool": { "must": [ {"term": {"customer": "Linkedin"}}, {"range": {"time": {"gte": 1506277800000}}} ] }, "aggs": { "counts_over_time": ... }}
```

Bucketing on geospatial data

Another powerful feature of bucket aggregation is the ability to do geospatial analysis on the data. If your data contains fields of the geo-point datatype, where the coordinates are captured, you can perform some interesting analysis, which can be rendered on a map to give you better insight into the data.

We will cover two types of geospatial aggregations in this section:

- Geodistance aggregation
- GeoHash grid aggregation

Geodistance aggregation

Geodistance aggregation helps in creating buckets of distances from a given geo-point. This can be better illustrated using a diagram:

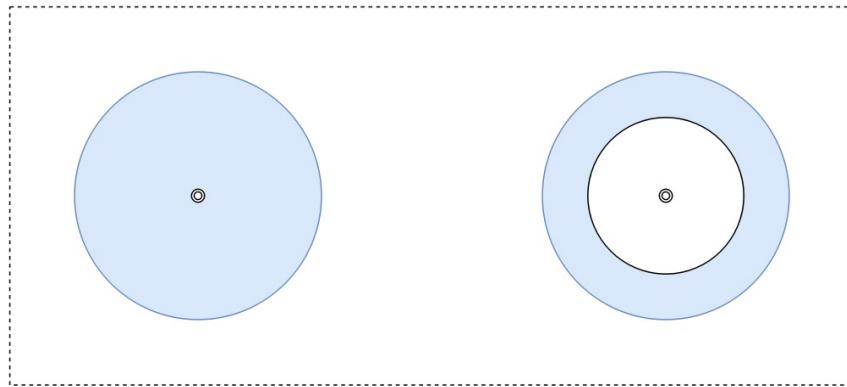


Fig 4.2 Geodistance aggregation with only to specified (left), and both to and from specified (right)

The shaded area in blue represents the area included in the geodistance aggregation.

The following aggregation will form a bucket with all the documents within the given distance from the given geo-point. This corresponds to the first (left) circle in the preceding diagram. The shaded area is from the center up to the given radius, forming a circle:

```
GET bigginsight/_search?size=0{ "aggs": ...}
```

GeoHash grid aggregation

GeoHash grid aggregation uses the GeoHash mechanism to divide the map into smaller units. You can read about GeoHash at https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geo_hash. The GeoHash system divides the world map into a grid of rectangular regions of different precisions. Lower values of precision represent larger geographical areas, while higher values represent smaller, more precise geographical areas:

```
GET bigginsight/_search?size=0
{
  "aggs": {
    "geo_hash": {
      "geohash_grid": {
        "field": "location",
        "precision": 7
      }
    }
  }
}
```

The data that we have in our network traffic example is spread over a very small geographical area, so we have used a `precision` of `7`. The supported values for precision are from `1` to `12`. Let's look at the response to this request:

```
{
  ...
  "aggregations": {
    "geo_hash": {
      "buckets": [
        {
          "key": "ts5e7vy",
          "doc_count": 161893
        },
        {
          "key": "ts5e7vw",
          "doc_count": 80942
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

After aggregating the data onto GeoHash blocks of `"precision": 7`, all the documents fell into two GeoHash regions, with the respective document counts seen in the response. We can zoom in on this map or request the data to be aggregated on smaller hashes, by increasing the value of the precision.

When you try a `precision` value of `9`, you will see the following response:

```
{
  ...
  "aggregations": {
    "geo_hash": {
      "buckets": [
        {
          "key": "ts5e7v",
          "doc_count": 242835
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

```
        "key": "ts5e7vy80k",
        "doc_count": 131034
    },
{
    "key": "ts5e7vwrdb",
    "doc_count": 60953
},
{
    "key": "ts5e7vy84c",
    "doc_count": 30859
},
{
    "key": "ts5e7vwxfn",
    "doc_count": 19989
}
]
}
}
```

As you can see, the GeoHash grid aggregation allows you to slice or aggregate the data over geographical regions of different sizes/precisions, which is quite powerful. This data can be visualized in Kibana, or it can be used in your application with a library that can render the data on a map.

We have covered a wide variety of bucket aggregations that let us slice and dice data on fields of various datatypes. We also looked at how to aggregate over text data, numerical data, dates/times, and geospatial data. Next, we will look at what pipeline aggregations are.

Pipeline aggregations

Pipeline aggregations, as their name suggests, allow you to aggregate over the results of another aggregation. They let you pipe the results of an aggregation as input to another aggregation. Pipeline aggregations are a relatively new feature, and they are still experimental. At a high level, there are two types of pipeline aggregation:

- **Parent pipeline** aggregations have the pipeline aggregation nested inside other aggregations
- **Sibling pipeline** aggregations have the pipeline aggregation as the sibling of the original aggregation from which pipelining is done

Let's look at how the pipeline aggregations work by considering one example of cumulative sum aggregation, which is a parent of pipeline aggregation.

Calculating the cumulative sum of usage over time

While discussing Date Histogram aggregation, in the *Focusing on a specific day and changing intervals* section, we looked at the aggregation that's used to compute hourly bandwidth usage for one particular day. After completing that exercise, we had data for September 24, with hourly consumption between 12:00 am to 1:00 am, 1:00 am to 2:00 am, and so on. Using cumulative sum aggregation, we can also compute the cumulative bandwidth usage at the end of every hour of the day. Let's look at the query and try to understand it:

```
GET /bigginsight/_search?size=0
{
  "query": {
    "bool": {
      "must": [
        {"term": {"customer": "Linkedin"}},
        {"range": {"time": {"gte": 1506277800000}}}
      ]
    }
  },
  "aggs": {
    "counts_over_time": {
      "date_histogram": {
        "field": "time",
        "interval": "1h",
        "time_zone": "+05:30"
      },
      "aggs": {
        "hourly_usage": {
          "sum": { "field": "usage" }
        },
        "cumulative_hourly_usage": {  
          "1  
          "cumulative_sum": {  
            "2  
            "buckets_path": "hourly_usage"  
          }  
        }  
      }
    }
  }
}
```

Only the part highlighted in bold is the new addition over the query that we saw previously. What we wanted was to calculate the cumulative sum over the buckets generated by the previous aggregation. Let's go over the newly added code, which has been annotated with numbers:

- This gives an easy to understand name to this aggregation and places it inside the parent Date Histogram aggregation, which is the bucket aggregation containing this aggregation.
- We are using the cumulative sum aggregation, and hence, we refer to its name, `cumulative_sum`, here.

- The `buckets_path` element refers to the metric over which we want to do the cumulative sum. In our case, we want to sum over the `hourly_usage` metric that was created previously.

The response should look as follows. It has been truncated for brevity:

```
{
  ...
  "aggregations": {
    "counts_over_time": {
      "buckets": [
        {
          "key_as_string": "2017-09-25T00:00:00.000+05:30",
          "key": 1506277800000,
          "doc_count": 465,
          "hourly_usage": {
            "value": 1385524
          },
          "cumulative_hourly_usage": {
            "value": 1385524
          }
        },
        {
          "key_as_string": "2017-09-25T01:00:00.000+05:30",
          "key": 1506281400000,
          "doc_count": 478,
          "hourly_usage": {
            "value": 1432123
          },
          "cumulative_hourly_usage": {
            {
              "value": 2817647
            }
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```

As you can see, `cumulative_hourly_usage` contains the sum of `hourly_usage`, so far. In the first bucket, the hourly usage and the cumulative hourly usage are the same. From the second bucket onward, the cumulative hourly usage has the sum of all the hourly buckets we've seen so far.

Pipeline aggregations are powerful. They can compute derivatives, moving averages, the average over other buckets (as well as the min, max, and so on), and the average over previously calculated aggregations.

Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to use Elasticsearch to build powerful analytics applications. We covered how to slice and dice the data to get powerful insight. We started with metric aggregation and dealt with numerical datatypes. We then covered bucket aggregation in order to find out how to slice the data into buckets or segments, in order to drill down into specific segments.

We also went over how pipeline aggregations work. We did all of this while dealing with a real-world-like dataset of network traffic data. We illustrated how flexible Elasticsearch is as an analytics engine. Without much additional data modeling and extra effort, we can analyze any field, even when the data is on a big data scale. This is a rare capability ...

Analyzing Log Data

Logs contain rich information about the state and behavior of a system or an application. Each system/application generates logs whenever an event occurs, and the frequency, amount of information, and format of the information it logs varies from one system/application to another. With so much information at our disposal, collecting it, extracting the relevant information from it, and analyzing it in near real time can be a daunting task.

In the previous chapters, we have already explored how Elasticsearch, with its rich aggregation features, assists in analyzing huge amounts of data in near real time. Before analysis can be performed, we need a tool that can assist/ease the process of collecting logs, extracting the relevant information from them, and pushing them to Elasticsearch.

In this chapter, we will be exploring Logstash, another key component of the Elastic Stack that is mainly used as an **ETL (Extract, Transform, and Load)** engine. We will also be exploring the following topics:

- Log Analysis challenges
- Using Logstash
- The Logstash architecture
- Overview of Logstash plugins
- Ingest node

Log analysis challenges

Logs are defined as records of incidents or observations. Logs are generated by a wide variety of resources, such as systems, applications, devices, humans, and so on. A log is typically made of two things; that is, a timestamp (the time the event was generated) and data (the information related to the event):

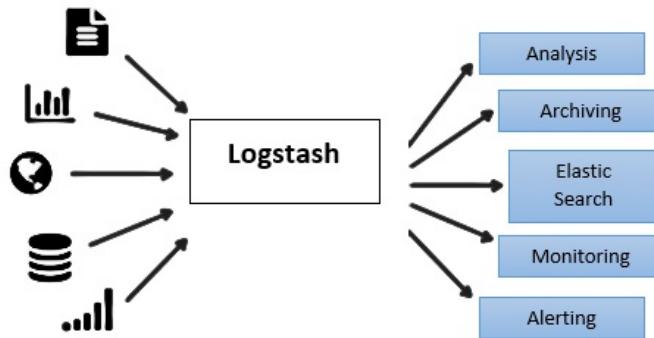
Log = Timestamp + Data

Logs are typically used for the following reasons:

- **Troubleshooting:** When a bug or issue is reported, the first place to look for what might have caused the issue is the logs. For example, when looking at an exception stack trace in the logs, you may easily find the root cause of the issue.
- **To understand system/application behavior:** When an application/system is running, it's like a black ...

Using Logstash

Logstash is a popular open source data collection engine with real-time pipelining capabilities. Logstash allows us to easily build a pipeline that can help in collecting data from a wide variety of input sources, and parse, enrich, unify, and store it in a wide variety of destinations. Logstash provides a set of plugins known as input filters and output plugins, which are easy to use and are pluggable in nature, thus easing the process of unifying and normalizing huge volumes and varieties of data. Logstash does the work of the ETL engine:



Some of the salient features of logstash are as follows:

- **Pluggable data pipeline architecture:** Logstash contains over 200 plugins that have been developed by Elastic and the open source community, which can be used to mix, match, and orchestrate different inputs, filters, and outputs, while building pipelines for data processing.
- **Extensibility:** Logstash is written in JRuby and, since it supports the pluggable pipeline architecture, you can easily build/create custom plugins to meet your custom needs.
- **Centralized data processing:** Data from disparate sources can be easily pulled using the various input plugins it provides and can be enriched, transformed, and sent to different/multiple destinations.
- **Variety and volume:** Logstash handles all types of logging data, for example, Apache, NGNIX logs, system logs, and window event logs, and also collects metrics from a wide range of application platforms over TCP and UDP. Logstash can transform HTTP requests into events and provides webhooks for applications like Meetup, GitHub, JIRA, and so on. It also supports consuming data from existing relational/NoSQL databases and queues including Kafka, RabbitMQ,

and so on. The Logstash data processing pipeline can be easily scaled horizontally, and, since Logstash 5, it supports persistent queues, thus providing the ability to reliably process huge volumes of incoming events/data.

- **Synergy:** Logstash has a strong synergy with Elasticsearch, Beats, and Kibana, thus allowing you to build end-to-end log analysis solutions with ease.

Installation and configuration

In the following sections, we will take a look at how to install and configure Logstash on our system.

Prerequisites

Java runtime is required to run Logstash. Logstash requires Java 8. Make sure that `JAVA_HOME` is set as an environment variable, and to check your Java version, run the following command:

```
java -version
```

You should see the following output:

```
java version "1.8.0_65"
Java(TM) SE Runtime Environment (build 1.8.0_65-b17)
Java HotSpot(TM) 64-Bit Server VM (build 25.65-b01, mixed mode)
```

For Java, you can use the official Oracle distribution (<http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/java/javase/downloads/index.html>) or an open source distribution such as OpenJDK (<http://openjdk.java.net/>).

Downloading and installing Logstash

Just like the other components of the Elastic Stack, downloading and installing Logstash is pretty simple and straightforward. Navigate to <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/logstash-oss> and, depending on your operating system, download the required ZIP/TAR file, as shown in the following screenshot:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/logstash-oss> in the address bar. The page title is "Download Logstash - OSS Only". A callout box highlights the "Notes" section, which contains the following text: "This distribution only includes features licensed under the Apache 2.0 license. To get access to full set of free features, use the default distribution." Below this, there are links for "View the detailed release notes [here](#)." and "Not the version you're looking for? View [past releases](#)." Java 8 is required for Logstash 6.x and 5.x.

Want to upgrade? We'll give you a hand. [Migration Guide »](#)

Version: 7.0.0

Release date: April 10, 2019

License: [Apache 2.0](#)

Downloads: [TAR.GZ sha](#) [ZIP sha](#)
[DEB sha](#) [RPM sha](#)

Notes: This distribution only includes features licensed under the Apache 2.0 license. To get access to full [set of free features](#), use the [default distribution](#).

View the detailed release notes [here](#).
Not the version you're looking for? View [past releases](#).
Java 8 is required for Logstash 6.x and 5.x.

Post 6.3 Elastic components come with two variations (distributions):

- *OSS distribution, which is 100% Apache 2.0*
- *Community License, which will have basic x-pack features that are free to use and are bundled with Elastic components*

More details about this can be found at <https://www.elastic.co/products/x-pack/open...>.

Installing on Windows

Rename the downloaded file `logstash-7.0.0.zip`. Unzip the downloaded file. Once unzipped, navigate to the newly created folder, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
E:\>cd logstash-oss-7.0.0
```

Installing on Linux

Unzip the `tar.gz` package and navigate to the newly created folder, as follows:

```
$>tar -xzf logstash-oss-7.0.0.tar.gz$>cd logstash-7.0.0/
```

The Logstash installation folder will be referred to as `LOGSTASH_HOME`.

Running Logstash

Logstash requires configuration to be specified while running it. Configuration can be specified directly as an argument using the `-e` option by specifying the configuration file (the `.conf` file) using the `-f` option/flag.

Using the terminal/command prompt, navigate to `LOGSTASH_HOME/bin`. Let's ensure that Logstash works fine after installation by running the following command with a simple configuration (the `logstash` pipeline) as a parameter:

```
E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>logstash -e "input { stdin {} } output { stdout {} }"
```

You should get the following logs:

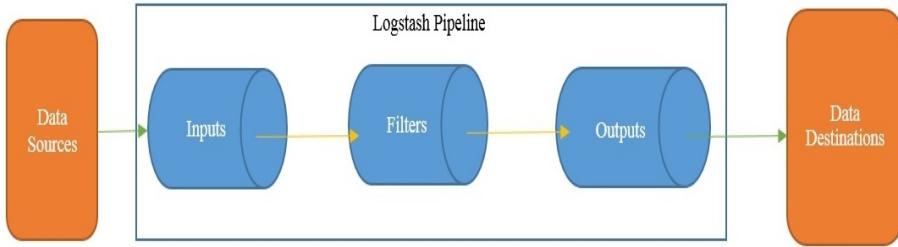
```
E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>logstash -e "input { stdin {} } output { stdout {} }"
Sending Logstash logs to E:/logstash-7.0.0/logs which is now configured via
log4j2.properties
[2019-03-17T15:17:23,771][INFO ][logstash.setting.writabledirectory] Creating directory
{:setting=>"path.queue", :path=>"E:/logstash-7.0.0/data/queue"}
[2019-03-17T15:17:23,782][INFO ][logstash.setting.writabledirectory] Creating directory
{:setting=>"path.dead_letter_queue", :path=>"E:/logstash-7
.0.0/data/dead_letter_queue"}
[2019-03-17T15:17:23,942][WARN ][logstash.config.source.multilocal] Ignoring the
'pipelines.yml' file because modules or command line options are specified
[2019-03-17T15:17:23,960][INFO ][logstash.runner ] Starting Logstash
{"logstash.version"=>"7.0.0"}
[2019-03-17T15:17:24,006][INFO ][logstash.agent ] No persistent UUID file found.
Generating new UUID {:uuid=>"5e0bf2a-d1dc-4c0b-9c4f-8efded
6c3260", :path=>"E:/logstash-7.0.0/data/uuid"}
[2019-03-17T15:17:32,701][INFO ][logstash.javapipeline ] Starting pipeline
{:pipeline_id=>"main", "pipeline.workers"=>4, "pipeline.batch.size"=>125
, "pipeline.batch.delay"=>50, "pipeline.max_inflight"=>500, :thread=>"#<Thread:0x74a9c9ab
run>"}
[2019-03-17T15:17:32,807][INFO ][logstash.javapipeline ] Pipeline started
{"pipeline.id"=>"main"}
The stdin plugin is now waiting for input:
[2019-03-17T15:17:32,897][INFO ][logstash.agent ] Pipelines running {:count=>1,
:running_pipelines=>[:main], :non_running_pipelines=>[]}
[2019-03-17T15:17:33,437][INFO ][logstash.agent ] Successfully started Logstash API
endpoint {:port=>9600}
```

Now, enter any text and press *Enter*. Logstash adds a timestamp and IP address information to the input text message. Exit Logstash by issuing a *CTRL + C* command in the shell where Logstash is running. We just ran Logstash with some simple configurations (pipeline). In the next section, we will explore the Logstash pipeline in more detail.

In some windows machines, after executing the previous mentioned command, you might encounter error like "ERROR: Unknown command '{stdin {} } output { stdout {} }". In that case, please remove the spaces in between the command and execute the command as follows C:\>logstash -e input"stdin{}"output"stdout{}"

The Logstash architecture

The Logstash event processing pipeline has three stages, that is, **Inputs**, **Filters**, and **Outputs**. A Logstash pipeline has two required elements, that is, input and output, and one option element known as filters:



Inputs create events, **Filters** modify the input events, and **Outputs** ship them to the destination. Inputs and outputs support codecs, which allow you to encode or decode the data as and when it enters or exits the pipeline, without having to use a separate filter.

Logstash uses in-memory bounded queues between pipeline stages by default (**Input to Filter** and **Filter to Output**) to buffer events. If Logstash terminates ...

Overview of Logstash plugins

Logstash has a rich collection of input, filter, codec, and output plugins. Plugins are available as self-contained packages called **gems**, and are hosted on [RubyGems.org](#). By default, as part of the Logstash distribution, many common plugins are available out of the box. You can verify the list of plugins that are part of the current installation by executing the following command:

```
E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>logstash-plugin list
```

By passing the `--verbose` flag to the preceding command, you can find out the version information of each plugin.

Using the `--group` flag, followed by either `input`, `filter`, `output`, or `codec`, you can find the list of installed input, filters, output, codecs, and plugins, respectively. For example:

```
E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>logstash-plugin list --group filter
```

You can list all the plugins containing a name fragment by passing the name fragment to `logstash-plugin list`. For example:

```
E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>logstash-plugin list 'pager'
```

In the preceding example commands, `E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>` refers to the `LOGSTASH_HOME\bin` directory on your machine.

Installing or updating plugins

If the required plugin is not bundled by default, you can install it using the `bin\logstash-plugin install` command. For example, to install the `logstash-output-email` plugin, execute the following command:

```
E:\logstash-7.0.0\bin>logstash-plugin install logstash-output-email
```

By using the `bin\logstash-plugin update` command and passing the plugin name as a parameter to the command, you can get the latest version of the plugin:

```
E:\logstash-oss-7.0.0\bin>logstash-plugin update logstash-output-s3
```

Executing just the `bin\logstash-plugin update` command would update all the plugins.

Input plugins

An input plugin is used to configure a set of events to be fed to Logstash. The plugin allows you to configure single or multiple input sources. It acts as the first section, which is required in the Logstash configuration file. The list of available input plugins out of the box is as follows:

logstash-input-beats	logstash-input-kafka	logstash-input-elasticsearch	logstash-input-ganglia
logstash-input-heartbeat	logstash-input-unix	logstash-input-syslog	logstash-input-stdin
logstash-input-udp	logstash-input-twitter	logstash-input-tcp	logstash-input-sqs
logstash-input-snmptrap	logstash-input-redis	logstash-input-pipe	logstash-input-graphite
logstash-input-s3	logstash-input-rabbitmq	logstash-input-lumberjack	logstash-input-http_poller
logstash-input-exec	logstash-input-file	logstash-input-http	logstash-input-imap
logstash-input-gelf	logstash-input-jdbc	logstash-input-azure_event_hubs	logstash-input-generator

Details of each of these plugins and a list of the other available plugins that are not part of the default distribution can be found at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/logstash/7.0/input-plugins.html>.

Output plugins

Output plugins are used to send data to a destination. Output plugins allow you to configure single or multiple output sources. They act as the last section, which is required in the Logstash configuration file. The list of available output plugins out of the box is as follows:

logstash-output-cloudwatch	logstash-output-csv	logstash-output-udp	logstash-output-webhdfs
logstash-output-elastic_app_search	logstash-output-elasticsearch	logstash-output-email	logstash-output-file
logstash-output-null	logstash-output-lumberjack	logstash-output-http	logstash-output-graphite
logstash-output-nagios	logstash-output-pagerduty	logstash-output-pipe	logstash-output-rabbitmq
logstash-output-redis ...			

Filter plugins

A filter plugin is used to perform transformations on the data. It allows you to combine one or more plugins, and the order of the plugins defines the order in which the data is transformed. It acts as the intermediate section between input and output, and it's an optional section in the Logstash configuration. The list of available filter plugins out of the box is as follows:

logstash-filter-de_dot	logstash-filter-dissect	logstash-filter-dns	logstash-filter-drop
logstash-filter-elasticsearch	logstash-filter-fingerprint	logstash-filter-geoip	logstash-filter-grok
logstash-filter-http	logstash-filter-jdbc_static	logstash-filter-jdbc_streaming	logstash-filter-json
logstash-filter-mutate	logstash-filter-metrics	logstash-filter-memcached	logstash-filter-kv
logstash-filter-ruby	logstash-filter-sleep	logstash-filter-split	logstash-filter-syslog_pri
logstash-filter-throttle	logstash-filter-translate	logstash-filter-urldecode	logstash-filter-truncate
logstash-filter-aggregate	logstash-filter-anonymize	logstash-filter-xml	logstash-filter-useragent
logstash-filter-date	logstash-filter-csv	logstash-filter-clone	logstash-filter-cidr
logstash-filter-anonymize	logstash-filter-aggregate		



Details of each of the preceding plugins and a list of the other available plugins that are not part of the default distribution can be found at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/logstash/7.0/filter-plugins.html>.

Codec plugins

Codec plugins are used to encode or decode incoming or outgoing events from Logstash. Codecs can be used in input and output as well. Input codecs render a convenient way to decode your data before it even enters the input. Output codecs provide a convenient way to encode your data before it leaves the output. The list of available codec plugins out of the box is as follows:

<code>logstash-codec-cef</code>	<code>logstash-codec-es_bulk</code>	<code>logstash-codec-json</code>	<code>logstash-codec-multiline</code>
<code>logstash-codec-collectd</code>	<code>logstash-codec-edn_lines</code>	<code>logstash-codec-json_lines</code>	<code>logstash-codec-netflow</code>
<code>logstash-codec-dots</code>	<code>logstash-codec-fluent</code>	<code>logstash-codec-line</code>	<code>logstash-codec-plain</code>
<code>logstash-codec-edn</code>	<code>logstash-codec-graphite</code>	<code>logstash-codec-msgpack</code> ...	

Exploring plugins

In this section, we will explore some commonly used input, output, filters, and codec plugins.

Exploring input plugins

Let's walk through some of the most commonly used input plugins in detail.

File

The `file` plugin is used to stream events from file(s) line by line. It works in a similar fashion to the `tail -f` Linux\Unix command. For each file, it keeps track of any changes in the file, and the last location from where the file was read, only sends the data since it was last read. It also automatically detects file rotation. This plugin also provides the option to read the file from the beginning of the file.

The `file` plugin keeps account of the current position in each file. It does so by recording the current position in a separate file named `sincedb`. This makes it possible as well as convenient to stop and restart Logstash and have it pick up where it left off without missing the lines that were added to the file while Logstash was stopped.

The location of the `sincedb` file is set to `<path.data>/plugins/inputs/file` by default, which can be overridden by providing the file path for the `sincedb_path` plugin parameter. The only required parameter for this plugin is the `path` parameter, which accepts one or more files to read from.

Let's take some example configurations to understand this plugin better:

```
#sample configuration 1
#simple1.conf

input
{
  file{
    path => "/usr/local/logfiles/*"
  }
}
output
{
  stdout {
  codec => rubydebug
  }
}
```

The preceding configuration specifies the streaming of all the new entries (that is, tailing the files) to the files found under the `/usr/local/logfiles/` location:

```
#sample configuration 2
#simple2.conf
input
{
  file{
    path => ["D:\es\app\*","D:\es\logs\*.txt"]
    start_position => "beginning"
    exclude => ["*.csv"]
    discover_interval => "10s"
    type => "applogs"
  }
}
output
{
  stdout {
```

```
    codec => rubydebug
}
}
```

The preceding configuration specifies the streaming of all the log entries/lines in the files found under the `D:\es\app*` location, and only files of the `.txt` type. Files found under the `D:\es\logs*.txt` location, starting from the beginning (specified by the `start_position => "beginning"` parameter), and while looking for files, it excludes files of the `.csv` type (specified by the `exclude => ["*.csv"]` parameter, which takes an array of values). Every line that's streamed would be stored in the message field by default. The preceding configuration also specified to add a new additional field type with the `applogs` value (specified by the `type => "applogs"` parameter). Adding additional fields would be helpful while transforming events in filter plugins or identifying the events in the output. The `discover_interval` parameter is used to define how often the `path` will be expanded to search for new files that are created inside the location specified in the `path` parameter.

Specifying the parameter/setting as `start_position => "beginning"` OR `since_db_path => "NULL"` would force the file to stream from the beginning every time Logstash is restarted.

Beats

The Beats input plugin allows Logstash to receive events from the Elastic Beats framework. Beats are a collection of lightweight daemons that collect operational data from your servers and ship to configured outputs such as Logstash, Elasticsearch, Redis, and so on. There are several Beats available, including Metricbeat, Filebeat, Winlogbeat, and so on. Filebeat ships log files from your servers, Metricbeat is a server monitoring agent that periodically collects metrics from the services and operating systems running on your servers, and Winlogbeat ships Windows event logs. We will be exploring the Beats framework and some of these Beats in the upcoming chapters.

By using the `beats` input plugin, we can make Logstash listen on desired ...

JDBC

This plugin is used to import data from a database to Logstash. Each row in the results set would become an event, and each column would get converted into fields in the event. Using this plugin, you can import all the data at once by running a query, or you can periodically schedule the import using `cron` syntax (using the `schedule` parameter/setting). When using this plugin, the user would need to specify the path of the JDBC drivers that's appropriate to the database. The driver library can be specified using the `jdbc_driver_library` parameter.

The SQL query can be specified using the `statement` parameter or can be stored in a file; the path of the file can be specified using the `statement_filepath` parameter. You can use either `statement` OR `statement_filepath` for specifying the query. It is good practice to store the bigger queries in a file. This plugin accepts only one SQL statement since multiple SQL statements aren't supported. If the user needs to execute multiple queries to ingest data from multiple tables/views, then they need to define multiple JDBC inputs (that is, one JDBC input for one query) in the input section of Logstash configuration.

The results set size can be specified by using the `jdbc_fetch_size` parameter. The plugin will persist the `sql_last_value` parameter in the form of a metadata file stored in the configured `last_run_metadata_path` parameter. Upon query execution, this file will be updated with the current value of `sql_last_value`. The `sql_last_value` value is used to incrementally import data from the database every time the query is run based on the `schedule` set. Parameters to the SQL statement can be specified using the `parameters` setting, which accepts a hash of the query parameter.

Let's look at an example:

```
#jdbc.conf
input {
  jdbc {
    # path of the jdbc driver
    jdbc_driver_library => "/path/to/mysql-connector-java-5.1.36-bin.jar"

    # The name of the driver class
    jdbc_driver_class => "com.mysql.jdbc.Driver"

    # MySql jdbc connection string to company database
    jdbc_connection_string => "jdbc:mysql://localhost:3306/company"

    # user credentials to connect to the DB
    jdbc_user => "user"
    jdbc_password => "password"

    # when to periodically run statement, cron format (ex: every 30 minutes)
    schedule => "30 * * * *"

    # query parameters
    parameters => { "department" => "IT" }

    # sql statement
    sql => "SELECT * FROM employees WHERE department = :department"
```

```
        statement => "SELECT * FROM employees WHERE department= :department AND
                      created_at >= :sql_last_value"
    }

output {
    elasticsearch {
        index => "company"
        document_type => "employee"
        hosts => "localhost:9200"
    }
}
```

The previous configuration is used to connect to the company schema belonging to MySQLdb and is used to pull employee records from the `IT` department. The SQL statement is run every 30 minutes to check for new employees that have been created since the last run. The fetched rows are sent to Elasticsearch and configured as the output.

`:sql_last_value` is set to Thursday, January 1, 1970 by default before the execution of the query, and is updated with the timestamp every time the query is run. You can force it to store a column value other than the last execution time, by setting the `use_column_value` parameter to true and specifying the column name to be used using the `tracking_column` parameter.

IMAP

This plugin is used to read emails from an IMAP server. This plugin can be used to read emails and, depending on the email context, the subject of the email, or specific senders, it can be conditionally processed in Logstash and used to raise JIRA tickets, pagerduty events, and so on. The required configurations are `host`, `password`, and `user`. Depending on the settings that are required by the IMAP server that you want to connect to, you might need to set values for additional configurations, such as `port`, `secure`, and so on. `host` is where you would specify your IMAP server host details, and `user` and `password` are where you need to specify the user credentials to authenticate/connect to the IMAP server:

```
| #email_log.conf|input {    imap { host ...
```

Output plugins

In this section, we will walk through some of the most commonly used output plugins in detail.

Elasticsearch

This plugin is used for transferring events from Logstash to Elasticsearch. This plugin is the recommended approach for pushing events/log data from Logstash to Elasticsearch. Once the data is in Elasticsearch, it can be easily visualized using Kibana. This plugin requires no mandatory parameters and it automatically tries to connect to Elasticsearch, which is hosted on `localhost:9200`.

The simple configuration of this plugin would be as follows:

```
#elasticsearch1.conf{input { stdin{} } output { elasticsearch {} }}
```

Often, Elasticsearch will be hosted on a different server that's usually secure, and we might want to store the incoming data in specific indexes. Let's look at an example of this:

```
#elasticsearch2.conf{input {
```

CSV

This plugin is used for storing output in the CSV format. The required parameters for this plugin are the `path` parameter, which is used to specify the location of the output file, and `fields`, which specifies the field names from the event that should be written to the CSV file. If a field does not exist on the event, an empty string will be written.

Let's look at an example. In the following configuration, Elasticsearch is queried against the `apachelogs` index for all documents matching `statuscode:200`, and the `message`, `@timestamp`, and `host` fields are written to a `.csv` file:

```
#csv.conf

input {
  elasticsearch {
    hosts => "localhost:9200"
    index => "apachelogs"
    query => '{ "query": { "match": { "statuscode": 200 } }}'
  }
}
output {
  csv {
    fields => ["message", "@timestamp", "host"]
    path => "D:\es\logs\export.csv"
  }
}
```

Kafka

This plugin is used to write events to a Kafka topic. It uses the Kafka Producer API to write messages to a topic on the broker. The only required configuration is the `topic_id`.

Let's look at a basic Kafka configuration:

```
#kafka.conf{input { stdin{} } output {  
  bootstrap_servers => "localhost:9092"  
}  
}  
  
kafka {  
  topic_id => 'logstash'
```

The `bootstrap_servers` parameter takes the list of all server connections in the form of host1:port1, host2:port2, and so on, and the producer will only use it for getting metadata (topics, partitions, and replicas). The socket connections for sending the actual data will be established based on the broker information that's returned in the metadata. `topic_id` refers to the topic name where messages ...

PagerDuty

This output plugin will send notifications based on preconfigured services and escalation policies. The only required parameter for this plugin is the `service_key` to specify the Service API Key.

Let's look at a simple example with basic `pagerduty` configuration. In the following configuration, Elasticsearch is queried against the `nginxlogs` index for all documents matching `statuscode:404`, and `pagerduty` events are raised for each document returned by Elasticsearch:

```
#kafka.conf
input {
  elasticsearch {
    hosts => "localhost:9200"
    index => "nginxlogs"
    query => '{ "query": { "match": { "statuscode": 404} }}'
  }
}

output {
  pagerduty {
    service_key => "service_api_key"
    details => {
      "timestamp" => "%{[@timestamp]}"
      "message" => "Problem found: %{[message]}"
    }
    event_type => "trigger"
  }
}
```

Codec plugins

In the following sections, we will take a look at some of the most commonly used codec plugins in detail.

JSON

This codec is useful if the data consists of `.json` documents, and is used to encode (if used in output plugins) or decode (if used in input plugins) the data in the `.json` format. If the data being sent is a JSON array at its root, multiple events will be created (that is, one per element).

The simple usage of a JSON codec plugin is as follows:

```
input{  
    stdin{  
        codec => "json"  
    }  
}
```

If there are multiple JSON records, and those are delimited by `\n`, then use the `json_lines` codec.

If the `json` codec receives a payload from an input that is not valid JSON, then it will fall back to plain text and add a `_jsonparsefailure` tag.

Rubydebug

This codec will output your Logstash event data using the Ruby Awesome Print library.

The simple usage of this codec plugin is as follows:

```
output{
  stdout{
    codec => "rubydebug"
  }
}
```

Multiline

This codec is useful for merging multiple lines of data with a single event. This codec comes in very handy when dealing with stack traces or single event information that is spread across multiple lines.

The sample usage of this codec plugin is shown in the following snippet:

```
input {
  file {
    path => "/var/log/access.log"
    codec => multiline {
      pattern => "^\\s "
      negate => false
      what => "previous"
    }
  }
}
```

The preceding multiline codec combines any line starting with a space with the previous line.

Filter plugins

Since we will be covering different ways of transforming and enriching logs using various filter plugins in the next chapter, we won't be covering anything about filter plugins here.

Ingest node

Prior to Elasticsearch 5.0, if we wanted to preprocess documents before indexing them to Elasticsearch, then the only way was to make use of Logstash or preprocess them programmatically/manually and then index them to Elasticsearch. Elasticsearch lacked the ability to preprocess/transform the documents, and it just indexed the documents as they were. However, the introduction of a feature called ingest node in Elasticsearch 5.x onward provided a lightweight solution for preprocessing and enriching documents within Elasticsearch itself before they are indexed.

If an Elasticsearch node is implemented with the default configuration, by default, it would be master, data, and ingest enabled (that is, it would act as a master node, data node, and ingest node). To disable ingest on a node, configure the following setting in the `elasticsearch.yml` file:

```
node.ingest: false
```

The ingest node can be used to preprocess documents before the actual indexing is performed on the document. This preprocessing is performed via an ingest node that intercepts bulk and index requests, applies the transformations to the data, and then passes the documents back to the index or bulk APIs. With the release of the new ingest feature, Elasticsearch has taken out the filter part of Logstash so that we can do our processing of raw logs and enrichment within Elasticsearch.

To preprocess a document before indexing, we must define the pipeline (which contains sequences of steps known as processors for transforming an incoming document). To use a pipeline, we simply specify the `pipeline` parameter on an index or bulk request to tell the ingest node which pipeline to use:

```
POST my_index/my_type?pipeline=my_pipeline_id
{
  "key": "value"
}
```

Defining a pipeline

A pipeline defines a series of processors. Each processor transforms the document in some way. Each processor is executed in the order in which it is defined in the pipeline. A pipeline consists of two main fields: a description and a list of processors.

The `description` parameter is a non-required field and is used to store some descriptions/usage of the pipeline; by using the `processors` parameter, you can list the processors to transform the document.

The typical structure of a pipeline is as follows:

```
{  
  "description" : "...",  
  "processors" : [ ... ]  
}
```

The ingest node has around 20 + built-in processors, including gsub, grok, convert, remove, rename, and so on. These can be used while building a pipeline. Along with built-in ...

Ingest APIs

The ingest node provides a set of APIs known as ingest APIs, which can be used to define, simulate, remove, or find information about pipelines. The ingest API endpoint is `_ingest`.

Put pipeline API

This API is used to define a new pipeline. This API is also used to add a new pipeline or update an existing pipeline.

Let's look at an example. As we can see in the following code, we have defined a new pipeline named `firstpipeline`, which converts the value present in the `message` field into upper case:

```
curl -X PUT http://localhost:9200/_ingest/pipeline/firstpipeline -H 'content-type: application/json' -d '{ "description" : "uppercase the incoming value in the message field", "processors" : [ { "uppercase" : { "field": "message" } } ]}'
```

When creating a pipeline, multiple processors can be defined, and the order of the execution depends on the order in which it is defined in the definition.

Let's look at an example for this. ...

Get pipeline API

This API is used to retrieve the definition of an existing pipeline. Using this API, you can find the details of a single pipeline definition or find the definitions of all the pipelines.

The command to find the definition of all the pipelines is as follows:

```
curl -X GET http://localhost:9200/_ingest/pipeline -H 'content-type: application/json'
```

To find the definition of an existing pipeline, pass the pipeline ID to the pipeline API. The following is an example of finding the definition of the pipeline named `secondpipeline`:

```
curl -X GET http://localhost:9200/_ingest/pipeline/secondpipeline -H 'content-type: application/json'
```

Delete pipeline API

The delete pipeline API deletes pipelines by ID or wildcard match. The following is an example of deleting the pipeline named `firstpipeline`:

```
curl -X DELETE http://localhost:9200/_ingest/pipeline/firstpipeline -H 'content-type: application/json'
```

Simulate pipeline API

This pipeline can be used to simulate the execution of a pipeline against the set of documents provided in the body of the request. You can either specify an existing pipeline to execute against the provided documents or supply a pipeline definition in the body of the request. To simulate the ingest pipeline, add the `_simulate` endpoint to the pipeline API.

The following is an example of simulating an existing pipeline:

```
curl -X POST http://localhost:9200/_ingest/pipeline/firstpipeline/_simulate -H 'content-type: application/json' -d '{  
  "docs" : [  
    { "_source": {"message":"first document"} },  
    { "_source": {"message":"second document"} }  
  ]  
}'
```

The following is an example of a simulated request, with the pipeline definition in the body of the request itself:

```
curl -X POST http://localhost:9200/_ingest/pipeline/_simulate -H 'content-type: application/json' -d '{  
  "pipeline" : {  
    "processors": [  
      {  
        "join": {  
          "field": "message",  
          "separator": "-"  
        }  
      }  
    ],  
    "docs" : [  
      { "_source": {"message":["first","document"]} }  
    ]  
  }  
}'
```

Summary

In this chapter, we laid out the foundations of Logstash. We walked you through the steps to install and configure Logstash to set up basic data pipelines, and studied Logstash's architecture.

We also learned about the ingest node that was introduced in Elastic 5.x, which can be used instead of a dedicated Logstash setup. We saw how the ingest node can be used to preprocess documents before the actual indexing takes place, and also studied its different APIs.

In the next chapter, we will show you how a rich set of filters brings Logstash closer to the other real-time and near real-time stream processing frameworks with zero coding.

Building Data Pipelines with Logstash

In the previous chapter, we understood the importance of Logstash in the log analysis process. We also covered its usage and its high-level architecture, and went through some commonly used plugins. One of the important processes of Logstash is converting unstructured log data into structured data, which helps us search for relevant information easily and also assists in analysis.

Apart from parsing the log data to make it structured, it would also be helpful if we could enrich the log data during this process so that we can gain further insights into our logs. Logstash comes in handy for enriching our log data, too. In the previous chapter, we have also seen that Logstash can read from a wide range of inputs and that Logstash is a heavy process. Installing Logstash on the edge nodes of shipping logs might not always be feasible. Is there an alternative or lightweight agent that can be used to ship logs? Let's explore that in this chapter as well.

In this chapter, we will be covering the following topics:

- Parsing and enriching logs using Logstash
- The Elastic Beats platform
- Installing and configuring Filebeats for shipping logs

Parsing and enriching logs using Logstash

The analysis of structured data is easier and helps us find meaningful/deeper analysis, rather than trying to perform analysis on unstructured data. Most analysis tools depend on structured data. Kibana, which we will be making use of for analysis and visualization, can be used effectively if the data in Elasticsearch is right (the information in the log data is loaded into appropriate fields, and the datatypes of the fields are more appropriate than just having all the values of the log data in a single field).

Log data is typically made up of two parts, as follows:

```
logdata = timestamp + data
```

`timestamp` is the time when the event occurred and `data` is the information about the event. `data` may contain ...

Filter plugins

A filter plugin is used to perform transformations on data. It allows us to combine one or more plugins, and the order of the plugins defines the order in which the data is transformed. A sample filter section in a Logstash pipeline would look as follows:

```
filter{
```



```
}
```

The generated event from the input plugin goes through each of the plugins defined in the filter section, during which it transforms the event based on the plugins defined. Finally, it is sent to the output plugin to send the event to the appropriate destination.

In the following sections, we will explore some common filter plugins that are used for transformation.

CSV filter

This filter is useful for parsing .csv files. This plugin takes an event containing CSV data, parses it, and stores it as individual fields.

Let's take some sample data and use a CSV filter to parse data out of it. Store the following data in a file named `users.csv`:

```
FName,LName,Age,Salary,EmailId,Gender
John,Thomas,25,50000,John.Thomas,m
Raj,Kumar,30,5000,Raj.Kumar,f
Rita,Tony,27,60000,Rita.Tony,m
```

The following code block shows the usage of the CSV filter plugin. The CSV plugin has no required parameters. It scans each row of data and uses default column names such as `column1`, `column2`, and so on to place the data. By default, this plugin uses , (a comma) as a field separator. The default separator can be changed by using the `separator ...`

Mutate filter

You can perform general mutations on fields using this filter. The fields in the event can be renamed, converted, stripped, and modified.

Let's enhance the `csv_file.conf` file we created in the previous section with the `mutate` filter and understand its usage. The following code block shows the use of the `mutate` filter:

```
#csv_file_mutuate.conf
input {
  file{
    path => "D:\es\logs\users.csv"
    start_position => "beginning"
    since_db_path => "NULL"
  }
}

filter {
  csv{
    autodetect_column_names => true
  }

  mutate {
    convert => {
      "Age" => "integer"
      "Salary" => "float"
    }
    rename => { "FName" => "Firstname"
      "LName" => "Lastname" }
    gsub => [
      "EmailId", "\.", "_"
    ]
    strip => ["Firstname", "Lastname"]
    uppercase => [ "Gender" ]
  }
}

output {
  stdout {
    codec => rubydebug
  }
}
```

As we can see, the `convert` setting within the `filter` helps to change the datatype of a field. The valid conversion targets are `integer`, `string`, `float`, and `boolean`.

If the conversion type is `boolean`, these are the possible values:

True: `true`, `t`, `yes`, `y`, and `1`.
False: `false`, `f`, `no`, `n`, and `0`.

The `rename` setting within the `filter` helps rename one or more fields. The preceding example renames the `FName` field to `Firstname` and `LName` to `Lastname`.

`gsub` matches a regular expression against a field value and replaces all matches with a replacement string. Since regular expressions work only on strings, this field can only take a field containing a string or an array of strings. It takes an array consisting of three elements per substitution (that is, it takes the field

`name`, `regex`, and the replacement string). In the preceding example, `.` in the `EmailId` field is replaced with `_`.

Make sure to escape special characters such as \, ., +, and ? when building regex.

`strip` is used to strip the leading and trailing white spaces.

The order of the settings within the `mutate` filter matters. The fields are mutated in the order the settings are defined. For example, since the `FName` and `LName` fields in the incoming event were renamed to `Firstname` and `Lastname` using the `rename` setting, other settings can no longer refer to `FName` and `LName`. Instead, they have to use the newly renamed fields.

`uppercase` is used to convert the string into upper case. In the preceding example, the value in the `Gender` field is converted into upper case.

Similarly, by using various settings of the `mutate` filter, such as `lowercase`, `update`, `replace`, `join`, and `merge`, you can lower-case a string, update an exiting field, replace the value of a field, join an array of values, or merge fields.

Grok filter

This is a powerful and often used plugin for parsing the unstructured data into structured data, thus making the data easily queryable/filterable. In simple terms, Grok is a way of matching a line against a pattern (which is based on a regular expression) and mapping specific parts of the line to dedicated fields. The general syntax of a `grok` pattern is as follows:

```
| %{PATTERN:FIELDNAME}
```

`PATTERN` is the name of the pattern that will match the text. `FIELDNAME` is the identifier for the piece of text being matched.

By default, groked fields are strings. To cast either to `float` or `int` values, you can use the following format:

```
| %{PATTERN:FIELDNAME:type}
```

Logstash ships with about 120 patterns by default. These patterns are reusable and ...

Date filter

This plugin is used for parsing the dates from the fields. This plugin is very handy and useful when working with time series events. By default, Logstash adds a `@timestamp` field for each event, representing the time it processed the event. But the user might be interested in the actual timestamp of the generated event rather than the processed timestamp. So, by using this filter, you can parse the date/timestamp from the fields and then use it as the timestamp of the event.

We can use the plugin like so:

```
filter {
  date {
    match => [ "timestamp", "dd/MMM/YYYY:HH:mm:ss Z" ]
  }
}
```

By default, the date filter overwrites the `@timestamp` field, but this can be changed by providing an explicit target field, as shown in the following code snippet. Thus, the user can keep the event time processed by Logstash, too:

```
filter {
  date {
    match => [ "timestamp", "dd/MMM/YYYY:HH:mm:ss Z" ]
    target => "event_timestamp"
  }
}
```

By default, the timezone will be the server local time, unless specified otherwise. To manually specify the timezone, use the `timezone` parameter/setting of the plugin. Valid timezone values can be found at <http://joda-time.sourceforge.net/timezones.html>.

If the time field has multiple possible time formats, then those can be specified as an array of values to the `match` parameter:

```
match => [ "eventdate", "dd/MMM/YYYY:HH:mm:ss Z", "MMM dd yyyy HH:mm:ss", "MMM d yyyy HH:mm:ss", "ISO8601" ]
```

Geoip filter

This plugin is used to enrich the log information. Given the IP address, it adds the geographical location of the IP address. It finds the geographical information by performing a lookup against the GeoLite2 City database for valid IP addresses and populates fields with results. The GeoLite2 City database is a product of the Maxmind organization and is available under the CCA-ShareAlike 4.0 license. Logstash comes bundled with the GeoLite2 City database, so when performing a lookup, it doesn't need to perform any network call; this is why the lookup is fast.

The only required parameter for this plugin is `source`, which accepts an IP address in string format. This plugin creates a `geoip` field with geographical details such as country, ...

Useragent filter

This filter parses user agent strings into structured data based on BrowserScope (<http://www.browserscope.org/>) data. It adds information about the user agent, such as family, operating system, version, device, and so on. To extract the user agent details, this filter plugin makes use of the `regexes.yaml` database that is bundled with Logstash. The only required parameter for this plugin is the `source` parameter, which accepts strings containing user agent details, as shown in the following screenshot:



Introducing Beats

Beats are lightweight data shippers that are installed as agents on edge servers to ship operational data to Elasticsearch. Just like Elasticsearch, Logstash, Kibana, and Beats are open source products too. Depending on the use case, Beats can be configured to ship the data to Logstash to transform events prior to pushing the events to Elasticsearch.

The Beats framework is made up of a library called `libbeat`, which provides an infrastructure to simplify the process of shipping operation data to Elasticsearch. It offers the API that all Beats can use to ship data to an output (such as Elasticsearch, Logstash, Redis, Kafka, and so on), configure the input/output options, process events, implement logging, and more. The

Beats by Elastic.co

Let's take a look at some used Beats commonly used by Elastic.co in the following sections.

Filebeat

Filebeat is an open source, lightweight log shipping agent that ships logs from local files. Filebeat runs as a binary and no runtime, such as JVM, is needed, hence it's very lightweight, executable, and also consumes fewer resources. It is installed as an agent on the edge servers from where the logs need to be shipped. It is used to monitor log directories, tail the files, and send them to Elasticsearch, Logstash, Redis, or Kafka. It is easily scalable and allows us to send logs from different systems to a centralized server, where the logs can then be parsed and processed.

Metricbeat

Metricbeat is a lightweight shipper that periodically collects metrics from the operating system and from services running on the server. It helps you monitor servers by collecting metrics from the system and services such as Apache, MondoDB, Redis, and so on, that are running on the server. Metricbeat can push collected metrics directly into Elasticsearch or send them to Logstash, Redis, or Kafka. To monitor services, Metricbeat can be installed on the edge server where services are running; it provides you with the ability to collect metrics from a remote server as well. However, it's recommended to have it installed on the edge servers where the services are running.

Packetbeat

Packetbeat captures the network traffic between applications and servers. It is a packet analyzer that works in real-time. It does tasks such as decoding the application layer protocols, namely HTTP, MySQL, Memcache, and Redis. It also correlates the requests to responses and records the different transaction fields that may interest you. Packetbeat is used to sniff the traffic between different servers and parses the application-level protocol; it also converts messages into transactions. It also notices issues with the backend application, such as bugs or other performance-related problems, and so it makes troubleshooting tasks easy. Packetbeat can run on the same server which contains application processes, or on its own servers. ...

Heartbeat

Heartbeat is a new addition to the Beat ecosystem and is used to check if a service is up or not, and if the services are reachable. Heartbeat is a lightweight daemon that is installed on a remote server to periodically check the status of services running on the host. Heartbeat supports ICMP, TCP, and HTTP monitors for checking hosts/services.

Winlogbeat

Winlogbeat is a Beat dedicated to the Windows platform. Winlogbeat is installed as a Windows service on Windows XP or later versions. It reads from many event logs using Windows APIs. It can also filter events on the basis of user-configured criteria. After this, it sends the event data to the configured output, such as Elasticsearch or Logstash. Basically, Winlogbeat captures event data such as application events, hardware events, security events, and system events.

Auditbeat

Auditbeat is a new addition to the Beats family, and was first implemented in the Elastic Stack 6.0. Auditbeat is a lightweight shipper that is installed on servers in order to monitor user activity. It analyzes and processes event data in the Elastic Stack without using Linux's auditd. It works by directly communicating with the Linux audit framework and collects the same data that the auditd collects. It also does the job of sending events to the Elastic Stack in real time. By using auditbeat, you can watch the list of directories and identify whether there were any changes as file changes are sent to the configured output in real time. This helps us identify various security policy violations.

Journalbeat

Journalbeat is one of the latest additions to the Beats family, starting with Elastic Stack 6.5. Journalbeat is a lightweight shipper that is installed as agents on servers to collect and ship systemd journals to either Elasticsearch or Logstash. Journalbeat requires systemd v233 or later to function properly.

Functionbeat

As lot of organizations are adopting serverless computing. Functionbeat is one of the latest additions to the Beats family, starting with the Elastic Stack 6.5, and is used to collect events on serverless environments and ship these events to Elasticsearch. At the time of writing, these events can only be sent to Elasticsearch.

Community Beats

These are Beats that are developed by the open source community using the Beats framework. Some of these open source Beats are as follows:

Beat Name	Description
spring beat	Used to collect health and metrics data from Spring Boot applications that are running within the actuator module.
rsbeat	Ships Redis slow logs to Elasticsearch.
nginx beat	Reads the status from Nginx.
mysql beat	Runs any query in MySQL and send the results to Elasticsearch.
mongobeat	It can be configured to send multiple document formats to Elasticsearch. It also monitors mongodb instances.
gabebat	Collects data from the Google Analytics Real Time Reporting API.
apachebeat	Reads the status from Apache HTTPD server-status. ...

Logstash versus Beats

After reading through the Logstash and Beats introduction, you might be confused as to whether Beats is a replacement for Logstash, the difference between them, or when to use one over the other. Beats are lightweight agents and consume fewer resources, and hence are installed on the edge servers where the operational data needs to be collected and shipped. Beats lack the powerful features of Logstash for parsing and transforming events. Logstash has many options in terms of inputs, filters, and output plugins for collecting, enriching, and transforming data. However, it is very resource-intensive and can also be used as an independent product outside of the Elastic Stack. Logstash is recommended to be installed on a dedicated server rather than edge servers, and listens for incoming events for processing. Beats and Logstash are complementary products, and depending on the use case, both of them can be used or just one of them can be used, as described in the *Introducing Beats* section.

Filebeat

Filebeat is an open source, lightweight log shipping agent that is installed as an agent to ship logs from local files. It monitors log directories, tails the files, and sends them to Elasticsearch, Logstash, Redis, or Kafka. It allows us to send logs from different systems to a centralized server. The logs can then be parsed or processed from here.

Downloading and installing Filebeat

Navigate to <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/beats/filebeat-oss> and, depending on your operating system, download the .zip/.tar file. The installation of Filebeat is simple and straightforward:

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the Elastic website at <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/beats/filebeat-oss>. The page title is "Download Filebeat - OSS Only". The main content area displays version information (Version: 7.0.0, Release date: April 10, 2019), a license link (Apache 2.0), and download links for various operating systems: DEB 32-BIT sha, DEB 64-BIT sha, RPM 32-BIT sha, RPM 64-BIT sha, LINUX 32-BIT sha, LINUX 64-BIT sha, MAC sha, WINDOWS 32-BIT sha, and a highlighted link for WINDOWS 64-BIT sha.

In this book, we will be using the Apache 2.0 version of Beats. Beats version 7.0.x is compatible with Elasticsearch 6.7.x and 7.0.x, and Logstash 6.7.x and 7.0.x. The compatibility matrix can be found at https://www.elastic.co/support/matrix#matrix_compatibility. When you come across Elasticsearch and Logstash examples with Beats in this chapter, make sure that you have compatible versions of Elasticsearch and Logstash installed.

Installing on Windows

Unzip the downloaded file and navigate to the extracted location, as follows:

```
E:> cd E:\filebeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64
```

To install Filebeat as a service on Windows, refer to the following steps:

1. Open Windows PowerShell as an administrator and navigate to the extracted location.
2. Run the following commands from the PowerShell prompt to install Filebeat as a Windows service:

```
PS >cd E:\filebeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64 PS E:\filebeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64>.\install-service-filebeat.ps1
```

In the event script execution is disabled on your system, you will have to set the execution policy for the current session:

```
PowerShell.exe -ExecutionPolicy UnRestricted -File .\install-service-filebeat.ps1
```

Installing on Linux

Unzip the `.tar.gz` package and navigate to the newly created folder, as follows:

```
$> tar -xzf filebeat-7.0.0-linux-x86_64.tar.gz  
$> cd filebeat
```

To install using `deb` or `rpm`, execute the appropriate commands in the Terminal:

`deb`:

```
curl -L -o https://artifacts.elastic.co/downloads/beats/filebeat/filebeat-7.0.0-amd64.deb  
sudo dpkg -i filebeat-7.0.0-amd64.deb
```

`rpm`:

```
curl -L -o https://artifacts.elastic.co/downloads/beats/filebeat/filebeat-7.0.0-x86_64.rpm  
sudo rpm -vi filebeat-7.0.0-x86_64.rpm
```

Filebeat will be installed in the `/usr/share/filebeat` directory. The configuration files will be present in `/etc/filebeat`. The `init` script will be present in `/etc/init.d/filebeat`. The `log` files will be present within the `/var/log/filebeat` directory.

Architecture

Filebeat is made up of key components called **inputs**, **harvesters**, and **spoolers**. These components work in unison in order to tail files and allow you to send event data to the specified output. The input is responsible for identifying the list of files to read logs from. The input is configured with one or many file paths, from which it identifies the files to read logs from; it starts a harvester for each file. The harvester reads the contents of the file. In order to send the content to the output, it reads each file, line by line. It also opens and closes the file, This implies that the descriptor is always open when the harvester runs. Once the harvester starts for one file, it sends the read content – also known as the events ...

Configuring Filebeat

Configurations related to Filebeat are stored in a configuration file named `filebeat.yml`. They use the YAML syntax.

The `filebeat.yml` file contains the following important sections:

- Filebeat inputs
- Filebeat modules
- Elasticsearch template settings
- Filebeat general/global options
- Kibana dashboard settings
- Output configuration
- Processors configuration
- Logging configuration

The `filebeat.yml` file will be present in the installation directory if `.zip` or `.tar` files are used. If `deb` or `rpm` is used for installation, then it will be present in the `/etc/filebeat` location.

Some of these sections are common for all type of Beats. Before we look into some of these, let's see what a simple configuration would look like. As we can see in the following configuration, when Filebeat is started, it looks for files ending with the `.log` extension in the `E:\packt\logs\` path. It ships the log entries of each file to Elasticsearch, which is configured as the output, and is hosted at `localhost:9200`:

```
#filebeat.yml
#===== Filebeat inputs =====

filebeat.inputs:
  - type: log

    # Change to true to enable this input configuration.
    enabled: true

    # Paths that should be crawled and fetched. Glob based paths.
    paths:
      - E:\packt\logs\*.log

#===== Outputs =====

#----- Elasticsearch output -----
output.elasticsearch:
  # Array of hosts to connect to.
  hosts: ["localhost:9200"]
```

Any changes made to `filebeat.yml` require restarting Filebeat to pick up the changes.

Place some log files in `E:\packt\logs\`. To get Filebeat to ship the logs, execute the following command:

```
Windows:  
E:>filebeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64>filebeat.exe  
  
Linux:  
[locationOfFilebeat]$ ./filebeat
```

To run the preceding example, please replace the content of the default `filebeat.yml` file with the configuration provided in the preceding snippet.

To validate whether the logs were shipped to Elasticsearch, execute the following command:

```
E:>curl -X GET http://localhost:9200/filebeat*/_search?pretty  
  
Sample Response:  
{  
  "took" : 2,  
  "timed_out" : false,  
  "_shards" : {  
    "total" : 1,  
    "successful" : 1,  
    "skipped" : 0,  
    "failed" : 0  
  },  
  "hits" : {  
    "total" : {  
      "value" : 3,  
      "relation" : "eq"  
    },  
    "max_score" : 1.0,  
    "hits" : [  
      {  
        "_index" : "filebeat-7.0.0-2019.04.22",  
        "_type" : "_doc",  
        "_id" : "bPnZQ2oB_501XGfHmzJg",  
        "_score" : 1.0,  
        "_source" : {  
          "@timestamp" : "2019-04-22T07:01:30.820Z",  
          "ecs" : {  
            "version" : "1.0.0"  
          },  
          "host" : {  
            "id" : "254667db-4667-46f9-8cf5-0d52ccf2beb9",  
            "name" : "madsh01-I21350",  
            "hostname" : "madsh01-I21350",  
            "architecture" : "x86_64",  
            "os" : {  
              "platform" : "windows",  
              "version" : "6.1",  
              "family" : "windows",  
              "name" : "Windows 7 Enterprise",  
              "kernel" : "6.1.7601.24408 (win7sp1_ldr_escrow.190320-1700)",  
              "build" : "7601.24411"  
            }  
          },  
          "agent" : {  
            "type" : "filebeat",  
            "ephemeral_id" : "d2ef4b77-3c46-4af4-85b4-e9f690ce00f1",  
            "hostname" : "madsh01-I21350",  
            "id" : "29600459-f3ca-4516-8dc4-8a0fd1bd6b0f",  
            "version" : "7.0.0"  
          },  
          "log" : {  
            "offset" : 0,  
            "offsets" : [0],  
            "offset_index" : 0  
          }  
        }  
      }  
    ]  
  }  
}
```

```
    "file" : {
      "path" : "E:\\packt\\logs\\one.log"
    },
    "message" : "exception at line1",
    "input" : {
      "type" : "log"
    }
  },
...
...
...
```

Filebeat places the shipped logs under an `filebeat` index, which is a time-based index based on the `filebeat-YYYY.MM.DD` pattern. The log data would be placed in the `message` field.

To start Filebeat on `deb` or `rpm` installations, execute the `sudo service filebeat start` command. If installed as a service on Windows, then use Powershell to execute the following command:

```
PS C:\> Start-Service filebeat
```

Filebeat inputs

This section will show you how to configure Filebeat manually instead of using out-of-the-box preconfigured modules for shipping files/logs/events. This section contains a list of inputs that Filebeat uses to locate and process log files. Each input item begins with a dash (-) and contains input-specific configuration options to define the behavior of the input.

A sample configuration is as follows:

```
#===== Filebeat inputs =====

filebeat.inputs:

- type: log
  # Enable or disable
  enabled: true
  paths:
    - E:\packt\logs\*.log
    - C:\programdata\elasticsearch\logs\*

  exclude_lines: ['^DBG']
  include_lines: ['^ERR', '^WARN']
  exclude_files: ['.gz$']
  fields:
    level: error_warn_logs
    tags: ['eslogs']

  multiline.pattern: '^[[[:space]]]'
  multiline.negate: false
  multiline.match: after

- type: docker
  enabled: true
  containers.path: "/var/lib/docker/containers"
  containers.stream: "all"
  containers.ids: "*"
  tags: ['dockerlogs']
```

As of Filebeat 7.0, inputs supported are Log, Stdin, Redis, UDP, Docker, TCP, Syslog, and NetFlow. Depending on the type of input configured, each input has specific configuration parameters that can be set to define the behavior ...

Filebeat general/global options

This section contains configuration options and some general/global settings to control the behavior of Filebeat.

Some of these configuration options are as follows:

- `registry_file`: It is used to specify the location of the registry file, which is used to maintain information about files, such as the last offset read and whether the read lines are acknowledged by the configured outputs or not. The default location of the registry is `${path.data}/registry`:

```
filebeat.registry_file: /etc/filebeat/registry
```

You can specify a relative path or an absolute path as a value for this setting. If a relative path is specified, it is considered relative to the `${path.data}` setting.

- `shutdown_timeout`: This setting specifies how long Filebeat waits on shutdown for the publisher to finish. This ensures that if there is a sudden shutdown while `filebeat` is in the middle of sending events, it won't wait for the output to acknowledge all events before it shuts down. Hence, the `filebeat` waits for a certain time before it actually shuts down:

```
filebeat.shutdown_timeout: 10s
```

- `registry_flush`: This setting specifies the time interval when registry entries are to be flushed to the disk:

```
filebeat.registry_flush: 5s
```

- `name`: The name of the shipper that publishes the network data. By default, `hostname` is used for this field:

```
name: "dc1-host1"
```

- `tags`: The list of tags that will be included in the `tags` field of every event Filebeat ships. Tags make it easy to group servers by different logical properties and aids filtering of events in Kibana and Logstash:

```
tags: ["staging", "web-tier", "dc1"]
```

- `max_procs`: The maximum number of CPUs that can be executed simultaneously. The default is the number of logical CPUs available in the system:

```
max_procs: 2
```

Output configuration

This section is used to configure outputs where events need to be shipped. Events can be sent to single or multiple outputs simultaneously. The allowed outputs are Elasticsearch, Logstash, Kafka, Redis, file, and console.

Some outputs that can be configured are as follows:

- `elasticsearch`: It is used to send the events directly to Elasticsearch.

A sample Elasticsearch output configuration is as follows:

```
output.elasticsearch: enabled: true hosts: ["localhost:9200"]
```

By using the `enabled` setting, you can enable or disable the output. `hosts` accepts one or more Elasticsearch nodes/servers. Multiple hosts can be defined for failover purposes. When multiple hosts are configured, the events are distributed to these nodes ...

Logging

This section contains the options for configuring the Filebeat logging output. The logging system can write logs to `syslog` or `rotate log` files. If logging is not explicitly configured, file output is used on Windows systems, and `syslog` output is used on Linux and OS X.

A sample configuration is as follows:

```
logging.level: debug
logging.to_files: true
logging.files:
  path: C:\logs\filebeat
  name: metricbeat.log
  keepfiles: 10
```

Some available configuration options are as follows:

- `level`: To specify the logging level.
- `to_files`: To write all logging output to files. The files are subject to file rotation. This is the default value.
- `to_syslog`: To write the logging output to `syslogs` if this setting is set to `true`.
- `files.path`, `files.name`, and `files.keepfiles`: These are used to specify the location of the file, the name of the file, and the number of most recently rotated log files to keep on the disk, respectively.

Filebeat modules

Filebeat modules simplify the process of collecting, parsing, and visualizing logs of common formats.

A module is made up of one or more filesets. A fileset is made up of the following:

- Filebeat input configurations that contain the default paths needed to look out for logs. It also provides configuration for combining multiline events when needed.
- An Elasticsearch Ingest pipeline definition to parse and enrich logs.
- Elasticsearch templates, which define the field definitions so that appropriate mappings are set to the fields of the events.
- Sample Kibana dashboards, which can be used for visualizing logs.

Filebeat modules require the Elasticsearch Ingest node. The version of Elasticsearch should be greater than 5.2.

Summary

In this chapter, we covered the powerful filter section of Logstash, which can be used for parsing and enriching log events. We have also covered some commonly used filter plugins. Then, we covered the Beats framework and took an overview of various Beats, including Filebeat, Heartbeat, Packetbeat, and so on, covering Filebeat in detail.

In the next chapter, we will be covering the various features of X-Pack, a commercial offering by Elastic.co which contains features such as securing the Elastic Stack, as well as monitoring, alerting, graphs, and reporting.

Visualizing Data with Kibana

Kibana is an open source web-based analytics and visualization tool that lets you visualize the data stored in Elasticsearch using a variety of tables, maps, and charts. Using its simple interface, users can easily explore large volumes of data stored in Elasticsearch and perform advanced analysis of data in real time. In this chapter, let's explore the various components of Kibana and explore how you can use it for data analysis.

We will cover the following topics in this chapter:

- Downloading and installing Kibana
- Preparing data
- Kibana UI
- Timelion
- Using plugins

Downloading and installing Kibana

Just as with other components of the Elastic Stack, downloading and installing Kibana is pretty simple and straightforward.

Navigate to <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/kibana-oss> and, depending on your operating system, download the ZIP/TAR file, as shown in the following screenshot:

The screenshot shows a web browser displaying the Elastic website at <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/kibana-oss>. The page title is "Download Kibana - OSS Only". Key details visible include:

- Version:** 7.0.0
- Release date:** April 10, 2019
- License:** Apache 2.0
- Downloads:**
 - WINDOWS sha
 - MAC sha
 - LINUX 64-BIT sha
 - RPM 64-BIT sha
 - DEB 64-BIT sha
- Containers:** Run with Docker
- Notes:** This distribution only includes features licensed under the Apache 2.0 license. To get access to full set of free features, use the default distribution.
- A link to "View the detailed release notes [here](#)".

The Elastic developer community is quite vibrant, and new releases with new features/fixes get released quite often. While you have been reading this book, the latest Kibana version might have changed. The instructions in this book are based on Kibana version 7.0.0. You can click on the past releases link and download version 7.0.0 (kibana-oss) if you want to follow as is, but the instructions/explanations in this book should hold good for any 7.x release.

Kibana is a visualization tool that relies on Elasticsearch for querying data that is used to generate visualizations. Hence, before proceeding further, make sure Elasticsearch is up and running.

Installing on Windows

Unzip the downloaded file. Once unzipped, navigate to the newly created folder, as shown in the following line of code:

```
E:\>cd kibana-7.0.0-windows-x86_64
```

To start Kibana, navigate to the `bin` folder, type `kibana.bat`, and press *Enter*.

Installing on Linux

Unzip the `.tar.gz` package and navigate to the newly created folder, shown as follows:

```
$> tar -xzf kibana-oss-7.0.1-linux-x86_64.tar.gz  
$> cd kibana-7.0.1-linux-x86_64/
```

To start Kibana, navigate to the `bin` folder, type `./kibana` (in the case of Linux) or `kibana.bat` (in the case of Windows), and press *Enter*.

You should get the following logs:

```
log [09:00:51.216] [info][status][plugin:kibana@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.279] [info][status][plugin:elasticsearch@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to yellow - Waiting for Elasticsearch  
log [09:00:51.293] [info][status][plugin:interpreter@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.300] [info][status][plugin:metrics@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.310] [info][status][plugin:apm_oss@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.320] [info][status][plugin:console@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.779] [info][status][plugin:timelion@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.785] [info][status][plugin:tile_map@undefined] Status changed from  
uninitialized to green - Ready  
log [09:00:51.987] [info][status][plugin:elasticsearch@undefined] Status changed from  
yellow to green - Ready  
log [09:00:52.036] [info][migrations] Creating index .kibana_1.  
log [09:00:52.995] [info][migrations] Pointing alias .kibana to .kibana_1.  
log [09:00:53.099] [info][migrations] Finished in 1075ms.  
log [09:00:53.102] [info][listening] Server running at http://localhost:5601
```

Kibana is a web application and, unlike Elasticsearch and Logstash, which run on the JVM, Kibana is powered by Node.js. During bootup, Kibana tries to connect to Elasticsearch running on `http://localhost:9200`. Kibana is started on the default port `5601`. Kibana can be accessed from a web browser using the `http://localhost:5601` URL. You can navigate to the `http://localhost:5601/status` URL to find the Kibana server status.

The status page displays information about the server's resource usage and lists the installed plugins, as shown in the following screenshot:

← → ⌂ ① localhost:5601/status#?_g=0

Kibana status is Green

MADSH01-APM01

1.42 GB Heap total	71.10 MB Heap used	0.00, 0.00, 0.00 Load
241.33 ms Response time avg	1972.00 ms Response time max	1.80 Requests per second

Plugin status

BUILD 23117 COMMIT ee89fd8

ID	Status
plugin:apm_oss@undefined	Ready
plugin:kibana@undefined	Ready
plugin:elasticsearch@undefined	Ready
plugin:interpreter@undefined	Ready
plugin:metrics@undefined	Ready
plugin:console@undefined	Ready
plugin:timelion@undefined	Ready
plugin:tile_map@undefined	Ready

Kibana should be configured to run against an Elasticsearch node of the same version. Running different patch version releases of Kibana and Elasticsearch (for example, Kibana 7.0.0 and Elasticsearch 7.0.1) is generally supported, but not highly encouraged.

Running different major version releases of Kibana and Elasticsearch (for example, Kibana 7.x and Elasticsearch 52.x) is not supported, nor is running minor versions of Kibana that are newer than the version of Elasticsearch (for example, Kibana 7.1 and Elasticsearch 7.0).

Configuring Kibana

When Kibana was started, it started on port `5601`, and it tried to connect to Elasticsearch running on port `9200`. What if we want to change some of these settings? All the configurations of Kibana are stored in a file called `kibana.yml`, which is present under the `config` folder, under `$KIBANA_HOME`. When this file is opened in your favorite text editor, it contains many properties (key-value pairs) that are commented by default. What this means is that, unless those are overridden, the value specified in the property is considered the default value. To uncomment the property, remove the `#` before the property and save the file.

The following are some of the key configuration settings that you should look for when starting out ...

Discover

The **Discover** page helps you to interactively explore data. It allows the user to interactively perform search queries, filter search results, and view document data. It also allows the user to save the search, or filter criteria so that it can be reused or used to create visualizations on top of the filtered results. Clicking on the third icon from the top-left takes you to the Discover page.

By default, the Discover page displays the events of the last 15 minutes. As the log events are from the period May 2014 to June 2014, set the appropriate date range in the time filter. Navigate to Time Filter | Absolute Time Range and set From as `2014-05-28 00:00:00.000` and >To to `2014-07-01 00:00:00.000`. Click Update, as shown in the following screenshot:

The screenshot shows the Elasticsearch Discover interface. At the top, there is a header with a magnifying glass icon, the text '0 hits', and a dropdown menu with options 'New', 'Save', 'Open', 'Share', and 'Inspect'. Below the header is a toolbar with icons for 'Filters' (highlighted with a red box), 'Lucene' (with a dropdown arrow), and a date range selector. The date range is set from 'May 28, 2014 @ 00:00:00.0' to 'Jul 1, 2014 @ 00:00:00.0' with an 'Update' button. To the right of the toolbar is a calendar for July 2014, with the current day (July 1) highlighted in blue. The calendar shows dates from 29 to 31 of June, and 1 to 3 of July, with corresponding times from 12:00 AM to 04:00 AM. Below the calendar is a message: 'No results match your search criteria'. Further down, there are sections for 'Expand your time range' and 'Refine your query'. A note at the bottom states: 'The search bar at the top uses Elasticsearch's support for Lucene Query String syntax.' The entire screenshot is framed by a red border.

The Discover page contains the sections shown in the following screenshot:

Discover

300,000 hits 5

New Save Open Share Inspect 7

Filters Search 4

Lucene May 29, 2014 @ 00:00:00.000 → Jul 1, 2014 @ 00:00:00.000 Refresh 8

+ Add filter 9

logstash* 1

Selected fields

Available fields

Count 6

@timestamp per 12 hours

#	Time	_source
1	Jun 27, 2014 @ 20:00:00.000	httpversion: 1.1 useragent.device: Spider useragent.os: Other useragent.os.name: Other useragent.build: useragent.name: EasouSpider version: 1 path: C:/packt/data/Dogs clientip: 183.68.215.59 referer: /* request: /script/netcat-webserver response: 200 bytes: 12 auth: - host: N4S9H1+Pm01 message: 183.68.215.59 -- [27/Jun/2014:08:00:00 +000] "GET /scripts/netcat-webserver HTTP/1.1" 200 122 "-" "Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; EasouSpider; <http://www.easou.com/search/spider.html>)" verb: GET agent: "Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; EasouSpider; <http://www.easou.com/search/spider.html>)" ident: - @timestamp: Jun 27, 2014 @ 20:00:00.000 geopip.country_code: CN geopip.region_code: GQ geopip.longitude: 13.25 geopip.country_code3: CN geopip.region_name: Guangdong geopip.ip: 183.68.215.59 geopip.latitude: 23.117 geopip.timezone: Asia/Shanghai geopip.continent_code: AS geopip.location: { "lon": 118.25, "lat": 30.5 }
2	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:29.000	httpversion: 1.1 useragent.os: Other useragent.os.name: I useragent.device: Other useragent.os.name: Other useragent.build: useragent.name: Tiny Tiny RSS version: 1 path: C:/packt/data/logo clientip: 198.46.149.143 referer: /* request: /blog/geekery/dissolving-battery-in-ubuntu-mn.html?1 message: 198.46.149.143 -- [27/Jun/2014:07:59:29 +0400] "GET /blog/geekery/dissolving-battery-in-ubuntu-mn.html?1"
3	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:29.000	utr_source=feedbackruth_petcute_feedbackruth_campaign=feed034+sentcom_Lete02Maiz+03sentcom_Lete.com+Jordan+Ssese1629 response: 200 bytes: 9,316 auth: - host: N4S9H1+Pm01 message: 198.46.149.143 -- [27/Jun/2014:07:59:29 +0400] "GET /blog/geekery/dissolving-good-or-bad-problems.html?1"
4	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:29.000	utr_source=feedbackruth_petcute_feedbackruth_campaign=feed034+sentcom_Lete02Maiz+03sentcom_Lete.com+Jordan+Ssese1629 HTTP/1.1" 200 9316 "-" "Tiny Tiny RSS/1.11 (<http://tt-rss.org>)" verb: GET
5	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:29.000	httpversion: 1.1 useragent.os: Other useragent.os.name: I useragent.device: Other useragent.os.name: Other useragent.build: useragent.name: Tiny Tiny RSS version: 1 path: C:/packt/data/logo clientip: 198.46.149.143 referer: /* request: /blog/geekery/solving-good-or-bad-problems.html?1
6	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:29.000	utr_source=feedbackruth_petcute_feedbackruth_campaign=feed034+sentcom_Lete02Maiz+03sentcom_Lete.com+Jordan+Ssese1629 response: 200 bytes: 19,756 auth: - host: N4S9H1+Pm01 message: 198.46.149.143 -- [27/Jun/2014:07:59:29 +0400] "GET /blog/geekery/solving-good-or-bad-problems.html?1"
7	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:29.000	utr_source=feedbackruth_petcute_feedbackruth_campaign=feed034+sentcom_Lete02Maiz+03sentcom_Lete.com+Jordan+Ssese1629 HTTP/1.1" 200 19756 "-" "Tiny Tiny RSS/1.11 (<http://tt-rss.org>)" verb: GET
8	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:19.000	httpversion: 1.1 useragent.device: Other useragent.os: Other useragent.os.name: Other useragent.build: useragent.name: Other version: 1 path: C:/packt/data/logo clientip: 202.69.11.26 referer: /* request: /f1/e12.css response: 200 bytes: 4,877 auth: - host: N4S9H1+Pm01 message: 202.69.11.26 -- [27/Jun/2014:07:59:19 +0400] "GET /f1/e12.css HTTP/1.1" 200 4877 "-" "
9	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:19.000	verb: GET agent: /* ident: - @timestamp: Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:19.000 geopip.country_code2: PK geopip.region_code: SD geopip.longitude: 67.082 geopip.country_code3: PK geopip.region_name: Ssish geopip.country_name: Pakistan geopip.ip: 202.69.11.26 geopip.latitude: 24.906 geopip.timezone: Asia/Karachi geopip.continent_code: AS geopip.location: { "lon": 67.082, "lat": 24.906 }
10	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:18.000	geopip.city_name: Karachi geopip.postal_code: 12311 lat: 61.0536839905E13 _type: doc _index: logstash-2014-06-27 _score: -
11	Jun 27, 2014 @ 19:59:18.000	httpversion: 1.1 useragent.device: Other useragent.os: Other useragent.os.name: Other useragent.build: useragent.name: Other version: 1 path: C:/packt/data/logo clientip: 5.153.24.131 referer: /* request: /f1/e10/logstash/logstash-1.1.0-nomlithic.jar response: 200 bytes: 48,823 996 auth: - host: N4S9H1+Pm01 message: 5.153.24.131 -- [27/Jun/2014:07:59:18 +0400] "GET /f1/e10/logstash/logstash-1.1.0-nomlithic.jar HTTP/1.1" 200 48823996 "-" "Chef Client/10.10.2 (ruby-1.8.7-p302; x86_64-linux; <http://ossode.com>)" verb: GET agent: Chef

Autocomplete history

Goto system control panel to activate windows

The numbers in the preceding screenshot, represent individual sections—Index Pattern (1), Fields List (2), Document Table (3), Query Bar (4), Hits (5), Histogram (6), Toolbar (7), Time Picker (8), Filters (9), and Expand/Collapse (10).

Let's look at each one of them:

- **Index Pattern:** All the configured index patterns are shown here in a dropdown and the default one is selected automatically. The user can choose the appropriate index pattern for data exploration.
- **Fields List:** All the fields that are part of the document are shown in this section. Clicking on the field shows Quick Count, that is, how many of the documents in the documents table contain a particular field, what the top five values are, and what percentage of documents contain each value, as shown in the following screenshot:



- **Document Table:** This section shows the actual document data. The table shows the **500** most recent documents that match the user-entered query/filters, sorted by timestamp (if the field exists). By clicking the Expand button found to the left of the document's table entry, data can be visualized in table format or JSON format, as follows:

Time	_source
Expand Button	
⌚ June 27th 2014, 17:43:20.000	<pre>request: /scripts/netcat-webserver agent: "Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; EasouSpider; +http://www.easou.com/search/spider.html)" geoip.ci geoip.timezone: Asia/Shanghai geoip.ip: 183.60.215.50 geoip.latitude: 23.117 geoip.country_name: China geoip.country_code2: CN geoip.ci geoip.country_code3: CN geoip.region_name: Guangdong geoip.location: { "lon": 113.25, "lat": 23.1167 } geoip.region_code: 44 geoip.long ident: - verb: GET useragent.os: Other useragent.build: useragent.name: EasouSpider useragent.os_name: Other useragent.device: Spider -- [27/Jun/2014:08:00:00 -0400] "GET /scripts/netcat-webserver HTTP/1.1" 200 182 "-" "Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; EasouSpider; +http://</pre>
View surrounding doc	
Table	JSON
@timestamp Q Q * June 27th 2014, 17:43:20.000	
@version Q Q * 1	
_id Q Q * AV4jh1xYxvTbjX4rA1W	
_index Q Q * logstash-2014.06.27	
_score Q Q * -	
_type Q Q * logs	
agent Q Q * "Mozilla/5.0 (compatible; EasouSpider; +http://www.easou.com/search/spider.html)"	
auth Q Q * -	
bytes Q Q * 182	
clientip Q Q * 183.60.215.50	
geoip.city_name Q Q * Guangzhou	
geoip.continent_code Q Q * AS	
geoip.country_code2 Q Q * CN	

During data exploration, we are often interested in a subset of fields rather than the whole of a document. In order to add fields to the document table, either hover over the field on the fields list and click its add button, or expand the document and click the field's Toggle column in table:

t	geoip.country_name	Q Q * China
geoip.ip		Toggle column in table

Added field columns replace the `_source` column in the **Documents**

table. Field columns in the table can be shuffled by clicking the right or left arrows found when hovering over the column name. Similarly, by clicking the remove button, **x**, columns can be removed from the table, as follows:

Time	geoip.city.name	response	request
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:43:20.000	Guangzhou	200	 Move column to the left
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:49.000	Buffalo	200	/blog/geekery/solving-good-or-bad-problems.html? utm_source=feedburner&utm_medium=feed&utm_campaign=Fe
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:49.000	Buffalo	200	/blog/geekery/disabling-battery-in-ubuntu-vms.html? utm_source=feedburner&utm_medium=feed&utm_campaign=Fe
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:39.000	-	200	/style2.css
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:38.000	Amsterdam	200	/files/logstash/logstash-1.1.0-monolithic.jar
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:37.000	-	200	/images/jordan-80.png
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:35.000	-	200	/reset.css
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:30.000	-	200	/blog/tags/X11
▶ June 27th 2014, 17:42:12.000	-	200	/images/googledotcom.png

- **Query Bar:** Using the query bar/search bar, the user can enter queries to filter the search results. Submitting a search request results in the histogram being updated (if the time field is configured for the selected index pattern), and the documents table, fields lists, and hits being updated to reflect the search results. Matching search text is highlighted in the document table. To search your data, enter your search criteria in the query bar and press *Enter*, or click the search icon.

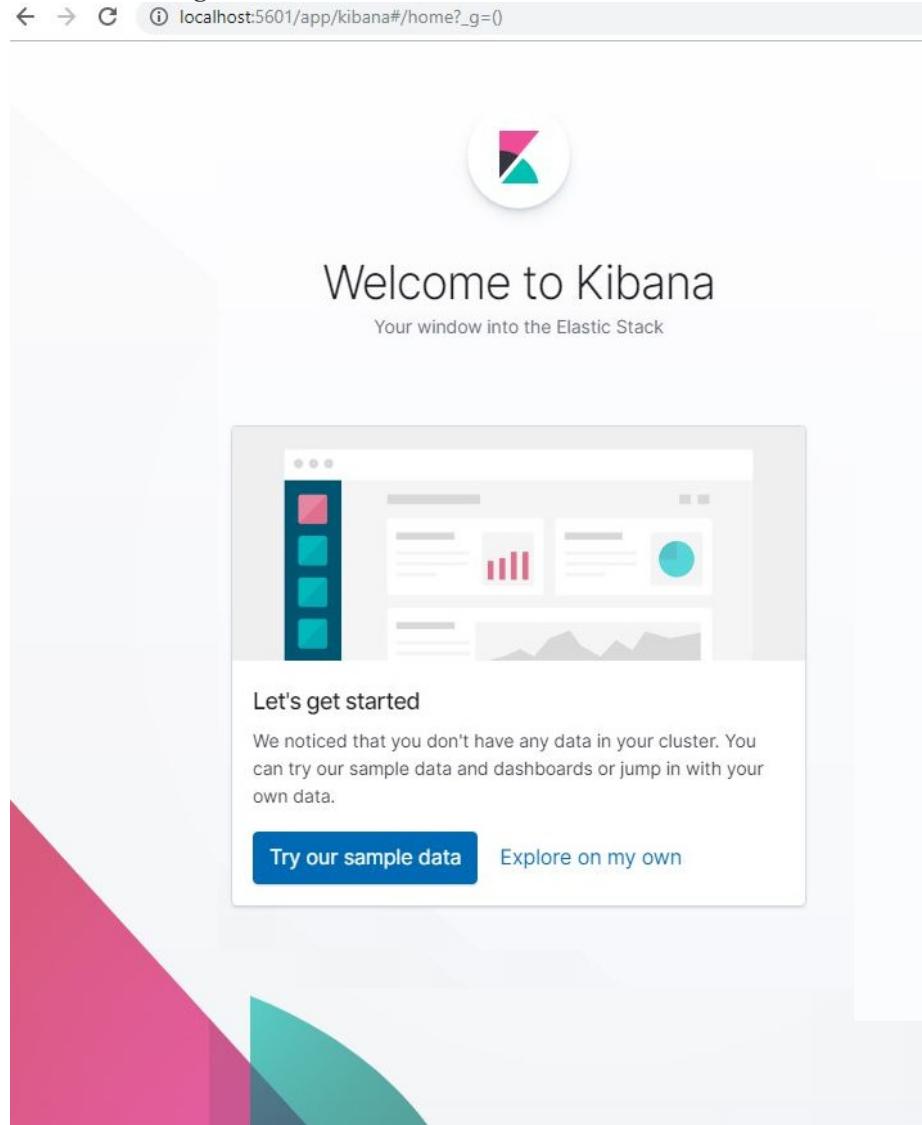
The query bar accepts three types of queries:

- An Elasticsearch query string/Lucene query, which is based on the Lucene query syntax: https://lucene.apache.org/core/2_9_4/queryparsersyntax.html
- A full JSON-based Elasticsearch query DSL: <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/reference/5.5/query-dsl.html>
- Kibana Query Language

Let's explore the three options in detail.

Preparing data

As Kibana is all about gaining insights from data, before we can start exploring with Kibana, we need to have data ingested to Elasticsearch, which is the primary data source for Kibana. When you launch Kibana, it comes with predefined options to enable loading of data to Elasticsearch with a few clicks and you can start exploring Kibana right away. When you launch Kibana by accessing the `http://localhost:5601` link in your browser for the first time, you will see the following screen:



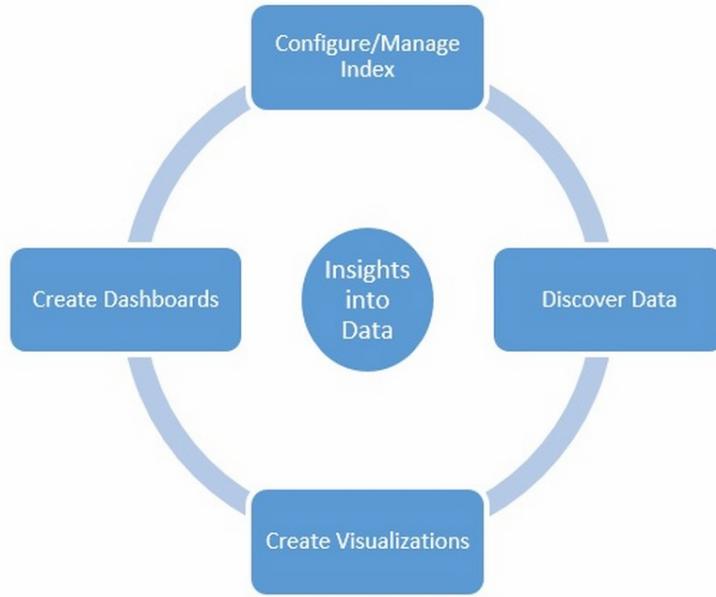
You can click on the Try our sample data button to get started quickly with Kibana by loading predefined data, or you can configure existing indexes ...

Kibana UI

In this section, let's understand how data exploration and analysis is typically performed and how to create visualizations and a dashboard to derive insights about data.

User interaction

Let's understand user interaction before diving into the core components of Kibana. A typical user interaction flow is as depicted in the following diagram:



The following points will give you a clear idea of the user interaction flow in Kibana:

- Prior to using Kibana for data analysis, the user will have already loaded the data into Elasticsearch.
- In order to analyze the data using Kibana, the user has to first make Kibana aware of the data stored in ES indexes. So, the user will need to configure the indexes on which they want to perform analysis.
- Once configured, the user has to find out the data structure, such as the fields ...

Configuring the index pattern

Before you can start working with data and creating visualizations to analyze data, Kibana requires you to configure/create an index pattern. Index patterns are used to identify the Elasticsearch index, that will have search and analytics run against it. They are also used to configure fields. An index pattern is a string with optional wildcards that can match multiple indices. Typically, two types of index exist within Elasticsearch:

- **Time-series indexes:** If there is a correlation between the timestamp and the data, the data is called **time-series data**. This data will have a timestamp field. Examples of this would be logs data, metrics data, and tweet data. When this data is stored in Elasticsearch, the data is stored in multiple indexes (rolling indexes) with index names appended by a timestamp, usually; for example, `unixlogs-2017.10.10, tweets-2017.05, logstash-2017.08.10.`
- **Regular indexes:** If the data doesn't contain timestamp and the data has no correlation with time, then the data is called **regular data**. Typically, this data is stored in single indexes—for example, departments data and product catalog data.

Open up Kibana from the browser using the `http://localhost:5601` URL. In the landing page, click on the Connect to your Elasticsearch instance link and type in `logstash-*` in the Index pattern text field and click on the Next step button, as shown in the following screenshot:

[Create index pattern](#)

No default index pattern. You must select or create one to continue.

Create index pattern

Kibana uses index patterns to retrieve data from Elasticsearch indices for things like visualizations.

[Include system indices](#)

Step 1 of 2: Define index pattern

Index pattern

logstash-*

You can use a * as a wildcard in your index pattern.
You can't use spaces or the characters \, /, ?, ", <, >, |.

[Next step](#)

✓ **Success!** Your index pattern matches 31 indices.

logstash-2014.05.28

logstash-2014.05.29

logstash-2014.05.30

logstash-2014.05.31

logstash-2014.06.01

logstash-2014.06.02

logstash-2014.06.03

logstash-2014.06.04

logstash-2014.06.05

logstash-2014.06.06

Rows per page: 10

⟨ 1 2 3 4 ⟩

On the Create Index Pattern screen, during the configuration of an index pattern, if the index has a datetime field (that is, it is a time-series index), the Time Filter field name dropdown is visible and allows the user to select the appropriate datetime field; otherwise, the field is not visible. As the data that we loaded in the previous section contains time-series data, in the Time Filter field name, select @timestamp and click Create, as follows:

[Create index pattern](#)

No default index pattern. You must select or create one to continue.

Create index pattern

Kibana uses index patterns to retrieve data from Elasticsearch indices for things like visualizations.

X Include system indices

Step 2 of 2: Configure settings

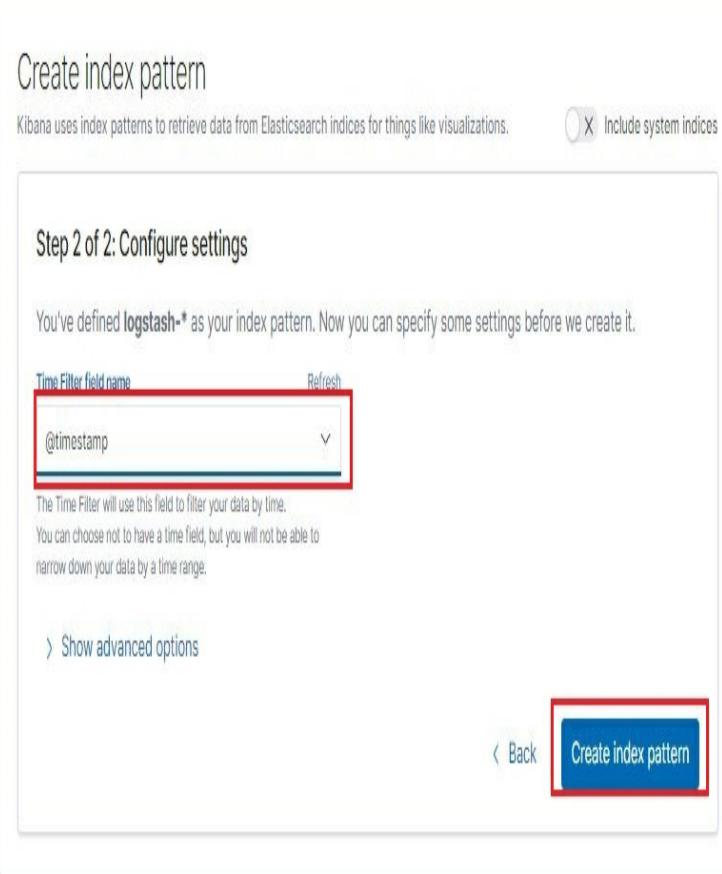
You've defined `logstash-*` as your index pattern. Now you can specify some settings before we create it.

Time Filter field name Refresh

The Time Filter will use this field to filter your data by time.
You can choose not to have a time field, but you will not be able to narrow down your data by a time range.

[Show advanced options](#)

[Back](#) [Create index pattern](#)

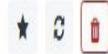


Once the index pattern is successfully created, you should see the following screen:

[Create index pattern](#)

★ logstash-*

logstash-*



Time Filter field name: @timestamp

This page lists every field in the **logstash-*** index and the field's associated core type as recorded by Elasticsearch. To change a field type, use the Elasticsearch [Mapping API](#).

[Fields \(78\)](#)[Scripted fields \(0\)](#)[Source filters \(0\)](#) Filter

All field types ▾

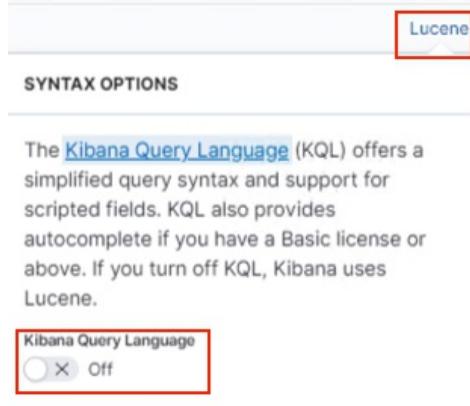
Name	Type	Format	Searchable	Aggregatable	Excluded
@timestamp	date				
@version	string				
_id	string				
_index	string				
_score	number				
_source	_source				
_type	string				
agent	string				
agent.keyword	string				
auth	string				

Rows per page: 10 ▾

< 1 2 3 4 5 ... 8 >

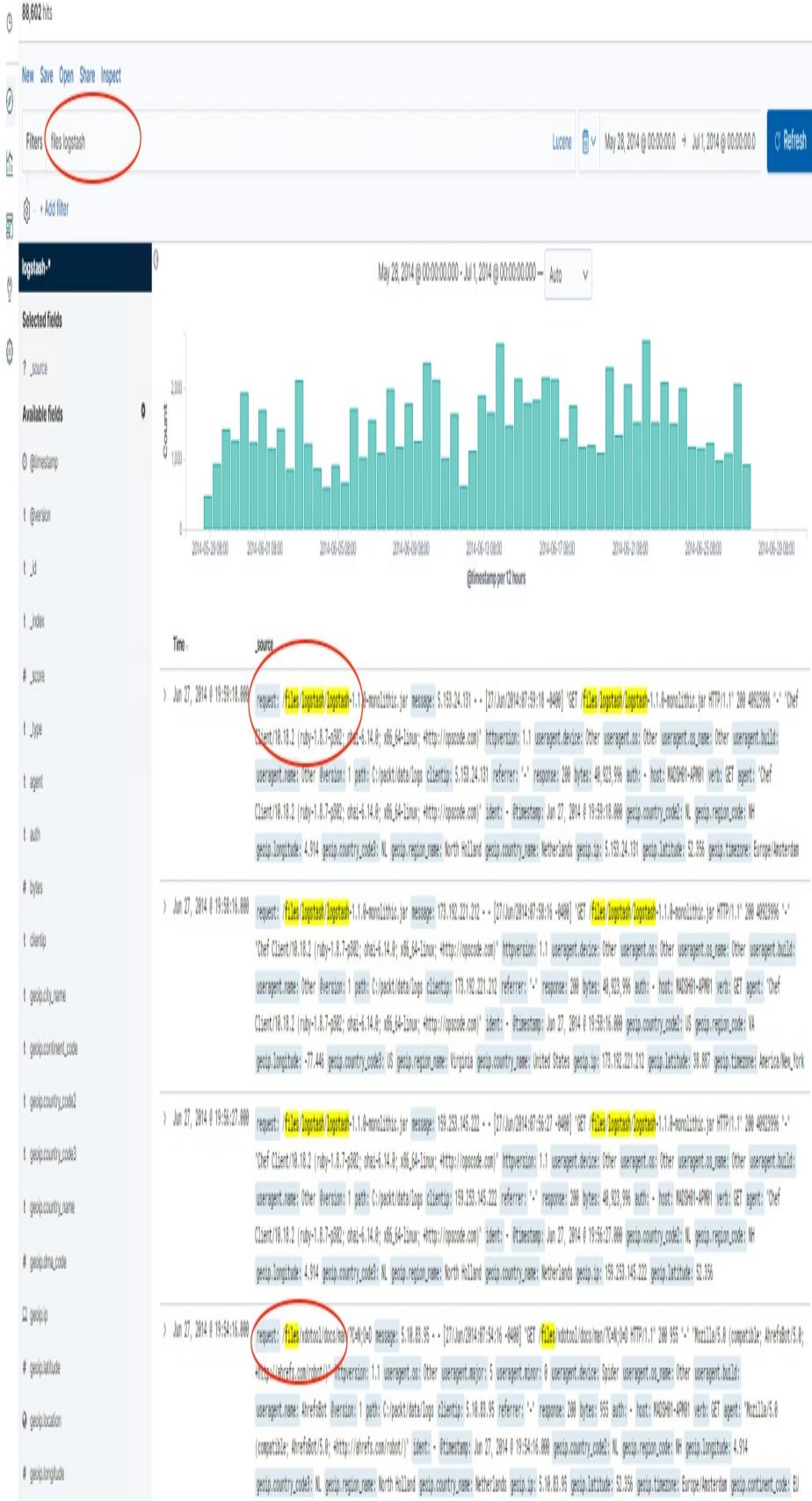
Elasticsearch query string/Lucene query

This provides the ability to perform various types of queries ranging from simple to complex queries that adhere to the Lucene query syntax. In the query bar, by default, KQL will be the query language. Go ahead and disable it as shown in the following screenshot. Once you disable it, KQL changes to Lucene in the query bar, as follows:



Let's see some examples:

Free Text search: To search for text present in any of the fields, simply enter a text string in the query bar:

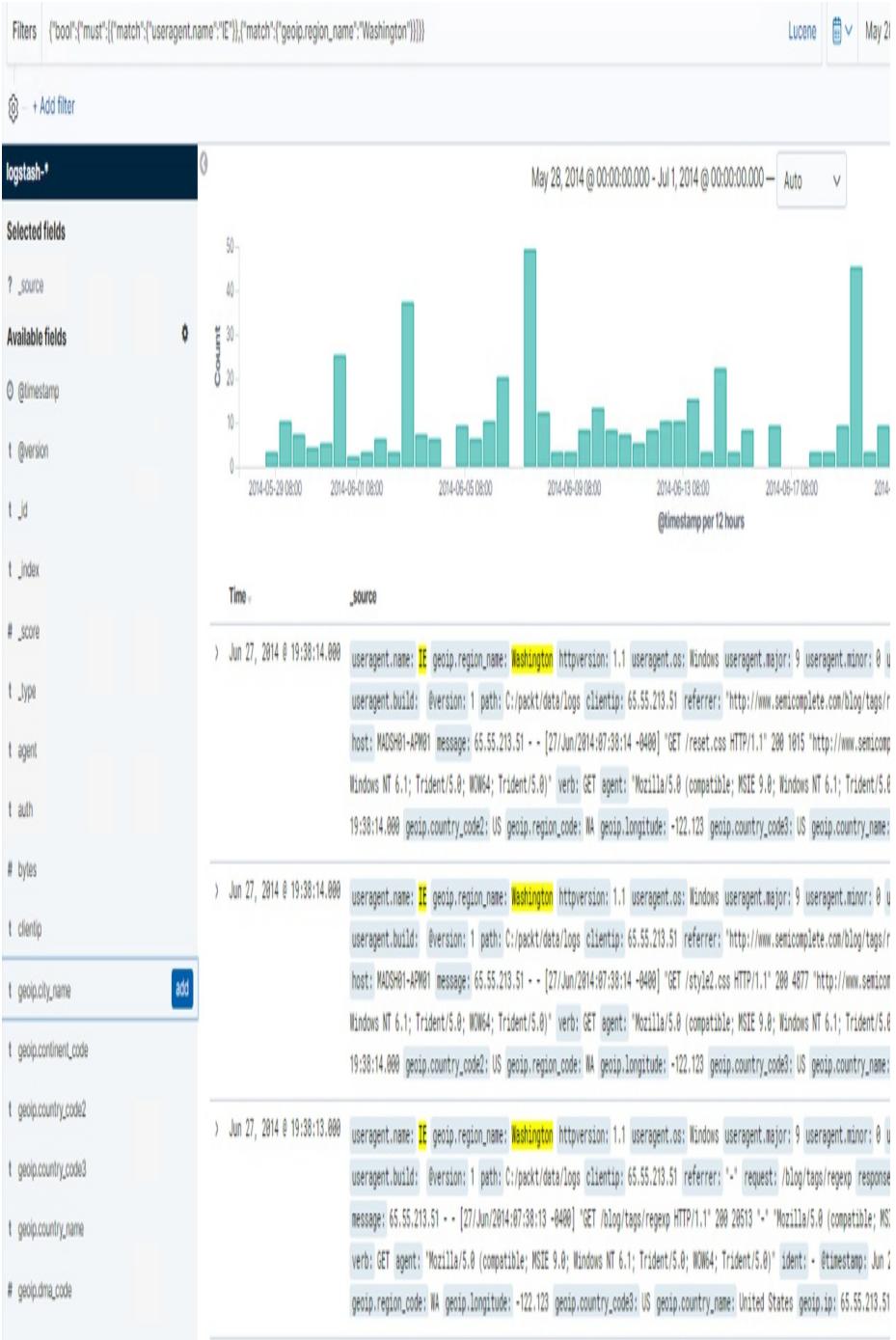


When you enter a group of words ...

Elasticsearch DSL query

By using a DSL query, queries can be performed from the query bar. The query part of a DSL query can be used to perform searches.

The following screenshot is an example of searching for documents that have `IE` in the `useragent.name` field and `washington` in the `geoip.region_name` field:



Hits: Hits represent the total number of documents that match the user-entered input query/criteria.

KQL

Kibana Query Language (KQL) is a query language specifically built for Kibana that is built to simplify query usage with easy-to-use syntax, support for querying on scripted fields, and ease of migration of queries as the product evolves. The query syntax is similar to the Lucene query syntax that was explained in the previous sections. For example, in a Lucene query, `response:404 geoip.city_name:Diedorf` would search for any documents having a response of `404` or any documents having `geoip.city_name` with `Diedorf`.

KQL doesn't allow spaces between expressions and the same thing would have to be written as `response:200 or geoip.city_name:Diedorf`, as shown in the following screenshot:

Similarly, you can have `and` `not` expressions too and group ...

Visualize

The **Visualize** page helps to create visualizations in the form of graphs, tables, and charts, thus assisting in visualizing all the data that has been stored in Elasticsearch easily. By creating visualizations, the user can easily make sense of data and can obtain answers to the questions they might have formed during the data discovery process. These built visualizations can be used when building dashboards.

For our Apache access log analysis use case, the user can easily find out answers to some of the typical questions raised in log analysis, such as the following:

- What's the traffic in different regions of the world?
- What are the top URLs requested?
- What are the top IP addresses making requests?
- How's the bandwidth usage over time?
- Is there any suspicious or malicious activity from any region/IP address?

All visualizations in Kibana are based on the aggregation queries of Elasticsearch. Aggregations provide the multi-dimensional grouping of results—for example, finding the top user agents by device and by country. Kibana provides a variety of visualizations, shown as follows:

New Visualization

X

Select a visualization type

Start creating your visualization by selecting a type for that visualization.



Area



Controls



Coordinate
Map



Data Table



Gauge



Goal



Heat Map



Horizontal Bar



Line



Markdown



Metric



Pie



Region Map



Tag Cloud



Timelion



Vega



Vertical Bar



Visual Builder



Kibana aggregations

Kibana supports two types of aggregations:

- Bucket aggregations
- Metric aggregations

As aggregation concepts are key to understanding how visualizations are built, let's get an overview of them before jumping into building visualizations.

Bucket aggregations

The grouping of documents by a common criteria is called **bucketing**.

Bucketing is very similar to the `GROUP BY` functionality in SQL. Depending on the aggregation type, each bucket is associated with a criterion that determines whether a document in the current context belongs to the bucket. Each bucket provides the information about the total number of documents it contains.

Bucket aggregations can do the following:

- Give an employee index containing employee documents
- Find the number of employees based on their age group or location
- Give the Apache access logs index, and find the number of 404 responses by country

Bucket aggregation supports sub aggregations, that is, given a bucket, all the documents present in the bucket can be further bucketed (grouped based on criteria); for example, finding the number of 404 responses by country and also by state.

Depending on the type of bucket aggregation, some define a single bucket, some define a fixed number of multiple buckets, and others dynamically create buckets during the aggregation process.

Bucket aggregations can be combined with metric aggregations—for example, finding the average age of employees per age group.

Kibana supports the following types of bucket aggregations:

- **Histogram:** This type of aggregation works only on numeric fields and, given the value of the numeric field and the interval, it works by distributing them into fixed-size interval buckets. For example, a histogram can be used to find the number of products per price range, with an interval of 100.
- **Date Histogram:** This is a type of histogram aggregation that works only on date fields. It works by distributing them into fixed-size date interval buckets. It supports date/time-oriented intervals such as 2 hours, days, weeks, and so on. Kibana provides various intervals including auto, millisecond, second, minute, hour, day, week, month, year, and custom, for ease of use. Using the `custom` option, date/time-oriented intervals such as 2 hours, days, weeks, and so on, can be supplied. This histogram is ideal for analyzing time-series data—for

example, finding the total number of incoming web requests per week/day.

- **Range:** This is similar to histogram aggregations; however, rather than fixed intervals, ranges can be specified. Also, it not only works on numeric fields, but it can work on dates and IP addresses. Multiple ranges can be specified using `from` and `to` values—for example, finding the number of employees falling in the age ranges 0-25, 25-35, 35-50, and 50 and above.

This type of aggregation includes the `from` value and excludes the `to` value for each range.

- **Terms:** This type of aggregation works by grouping documents based on each unique term in the field. This aggregation is ideal for finding the top n values for a field—for example, finding the top five countries based on the number of incoming web requests.

This aggregation works on `keyword` fields only.

- **Filters:** This aggregation is used to create buckets based on a filter condition. This aggregation allows for the comparison of specific values. For example, finding the average number of web requests in India compared to the US.
- **GeoHash Grid:** This aggregation works with fields containing `geo_point` values. This aggregation is used for plotting `geo_points` on a map by grouping them into buckets—for example, visualizing web request traffic over different geographies.

Metric

This is used to compute metrics based on values extracted from the fields of a document. Metrics are used in conjunction with buckets. The different metrics that are available are as follows:

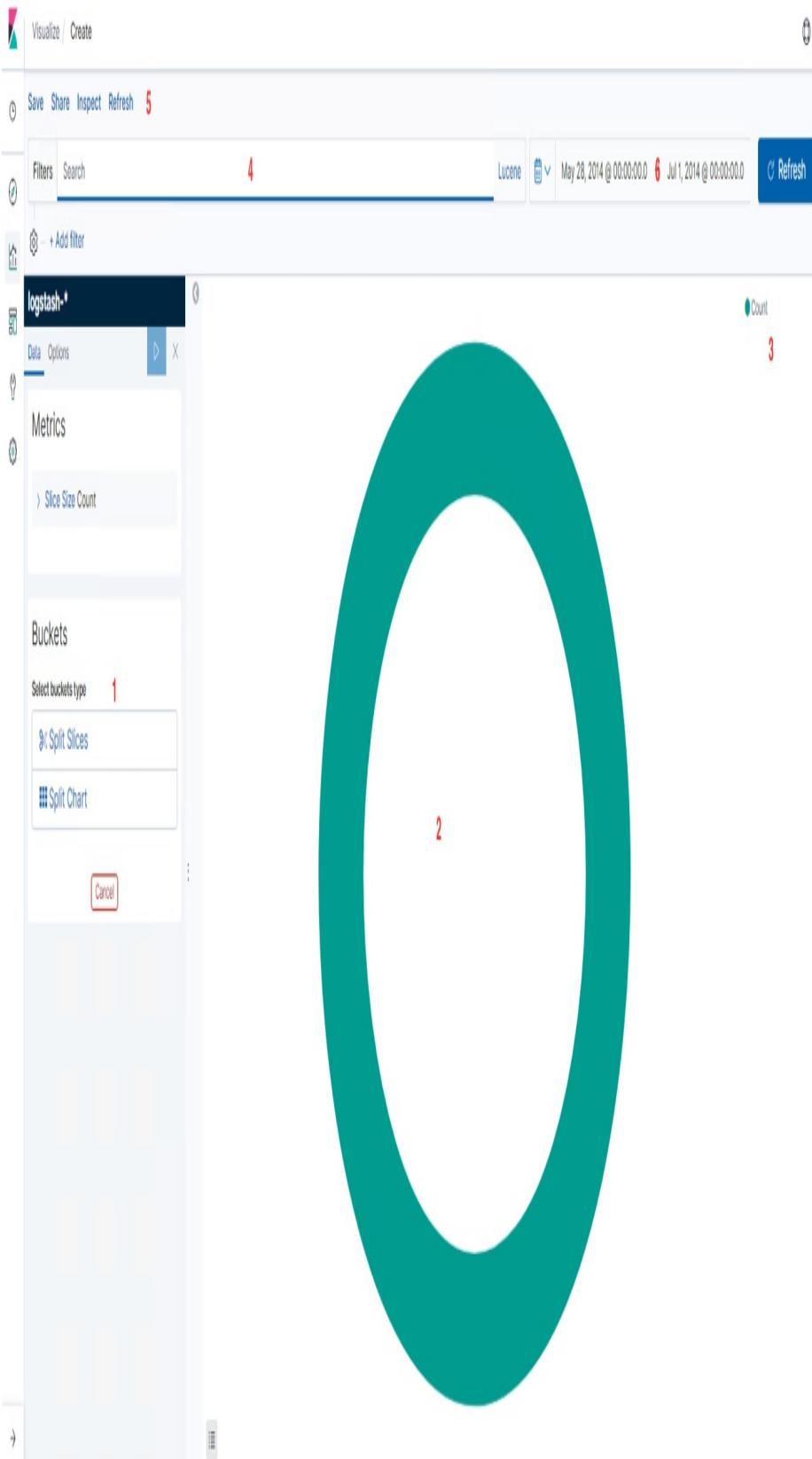
- **Count:** The default metric in Kibana visualizations; returns the count of documents
- **Average:** Used to compute the average value (for a field) of all the documents in the bucket
- **Sum:** Used to compute the sum value (for a field) of all the documents in the bucket
- **Median:** Used to compute the median value (for a field) of all the documents in the bucket
- **Min:** Used to compute the minimum value (for a field) of all the documents in the bucket
- **Max:** Used to compute the maximum value (for a field) of all the documents in the bucket
- **Standard deviation:** Used ...

Creating a visualization

The following are the steps to create visualizations:

1. Navigate to the Visualize page and click the Create a new Visualization button or the + button
2. Select a visualization type
3. Select a data source
4. Build the visualization

The **Visualize** Interface looks as follows:



The following are the components of the **Visualize** interface as depicted in

the screenshot:

- **Visualization designer:** This is used for choosing appropriate metrics and buckets for creating visualizations.
- **Visualization preview:** Based on the metrics, buckets, queries, filters, and time frame selected, the visualization is dynamically changed.
- **Label:** This reflects the metric type and bucket keys as labels. Colors in the visualization can be changed by clicking on **Label** and choosing the color from the color palette.
- **Query Bar/Field filters:** This is used to filter the search results.
- **Toolbar:** This provides the option to save, inspect (ES queries), and share visualizations.
- **Time filter:** Using the time filter, the user can restrict the time to filter the search results.

Time filters, the query bar, and field filters are explained in the Discover section.

Visualization types

Let's take a look at each visualization type in detail.

Line, area, and bar charts

These charts are used for visualizing the data distributions by plotting them against an x/y axis. These charts are also used for visualizing the time-series data to analyze trends. Bar and area charts are very useful for visualizing stacked data (that is, when sub aggregations are used).

Kibana 5.5 onward provides the option to dynamically switch the chart type; that is, the user can start off with a line chart but can change its type to either bar or area, thus allowing for the flexibility of choosing the right visualizations for analysis.

Data tables

This is used to display aggregated data in a tabular format. This aggregation is useful for analyzing data that has a high degree of variance and that would be difficult to analyze using charts. For example, a data table is useful for finding the top 20 URLs or top 20 IP addresses. It helps identify the top n types of aggregations.

Markdown widgets

This type of visualization is used to create formatted text containing general information, comments, and instructions pertaining to a dashboard. This widget accepts GitHub-flavored Markdown text (<https://help.github.com/categories/writing-on-github/>).

Metrics

Metric aggregations work only on numeric fields and display a single numeric value for the aggregations that are selected.

Goals

Goal is a metric aggregation that provides visualizations that display how the metric progresses toward a fixed goal. It is a new visualization that was introduced in Kibana 5.5.

Gauges

A **gauge** is a metric aggregation that provides visualizations that are used to show how a metric value relates to the predefined thresholds/ranges. For example, this visualization can be used to show whether a server load is within a normal range or instead has reached critical capacity. It is a new visualization that was introduced in Kibana 5.5.

Pie charts

This type of visualization is used to represent part-to-whole relationships.
Parts are represented by slices in the visualization.

Co-ordinate maps

This type of visualization is used to display the geographical area mapped to the data determined by the specified buckets/aggregations. In order to make use of this visualization, documents must have some fields mapped to the `geo_point` datatype. It uses a GeoHash grid aggregation and groups points into buckets that represent cells in a grid. This type of visualization was previously called a tile map.

Region maps

Region maps are thematic maps on which boundary vector shapes are colored using a gradient; higher-intensity colors indicate higher values, and lower-intensity colors indicate lower values. These are also known as **choropleth maps** (https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Choropleth_map). Kibana offers two vector layers by default: one for countries of the world and one for US shapes. It is a new type of visualization that was introduced in Kibana 5.5.

Tag clouds

A **tag cloud** is a visual representation of text data typically used to visualize free-form text. Tags are usually single words, and the importance of each tag is shown with a font size or color. The font size for each word is determined by the metric aggregation. For example, if a count (metric) is used, then the most frequently occurring word has the biggest font size and the least occurring word has the smallest font size.

Visualizations in action

Let's see how different visualizations can help us in doing the following:

- Analyzing response codes over time
- Finding the top 10 requested URLs
- Analyzing the bandwidth usage of the top five countries over time
- Finding the most used user agent

*As the log events are from the period May 2014 to June 2014, set the appropriate date range in the time filter. Navigate to **Time Filter | Absolute Time Range** and set **From** as 2014-05-28 00:00:00.000 and **To** to 2014-07-01 00:00:00.000; click Go.*

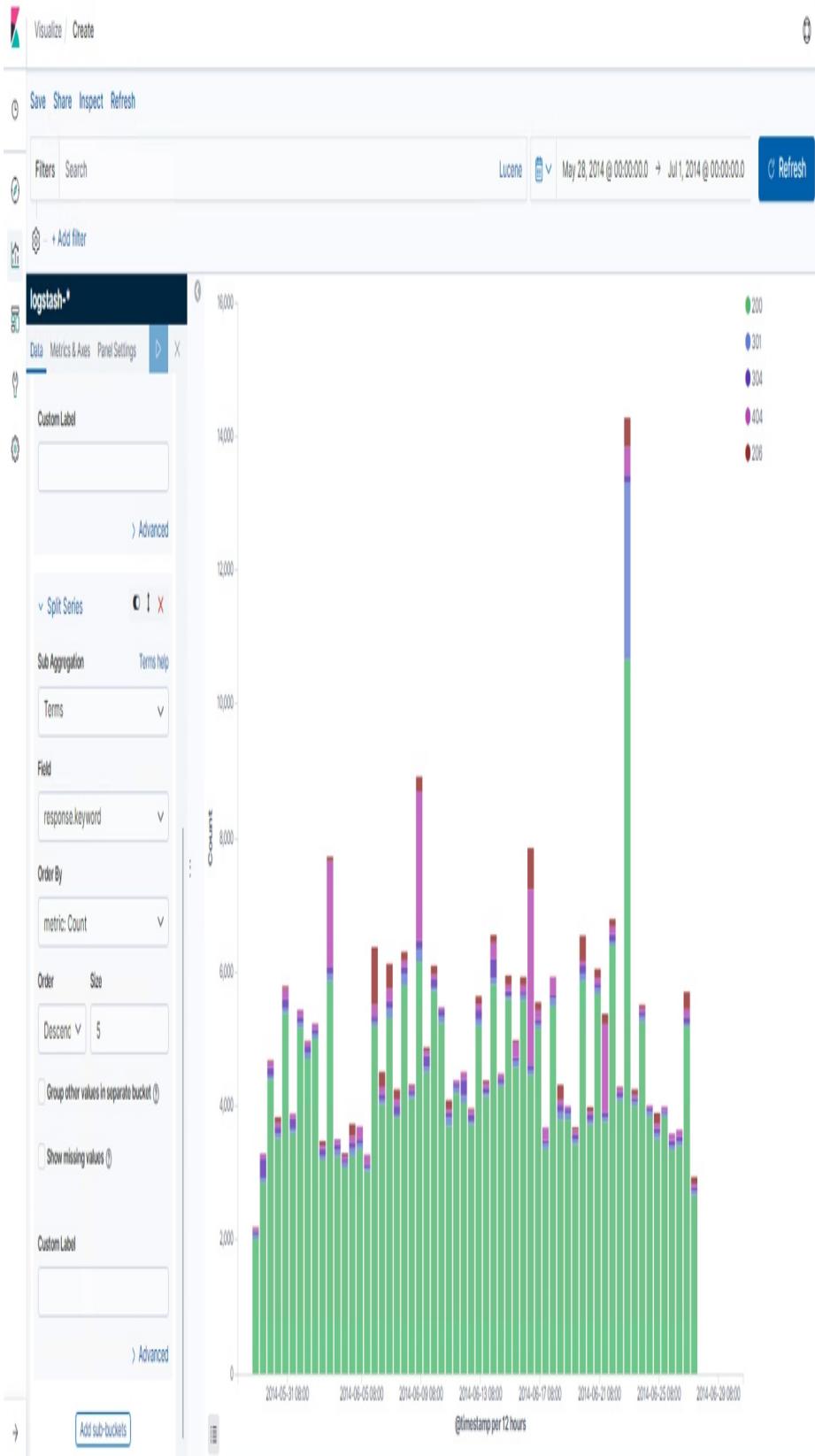
Response codes over time

This can be visualized easily using a bar graph.

Create a new visualization:

1. Click on New and select Vertical Bar
2. Select `Logstash-*` under From a New Search, Select Index
3. On the *x* axis, select Date Histogram and `@timestamp` as the field
4. Click Add sub-buckets and select Split Series
5. Select **Terms** as the Sub Aggregation
6. Select **response.keyword** as the field
7. Click the Play (**Apply Changes**) button

The following screenshot displays the steps to create a new visualization for response codes over time:



Save the visualization as Response Codes By Time.

As seen in the visualization, on a few days, such as June 9, June 16, and ...

Top 10 requested URLs

This can be visualized easily using a data table.

The steps are as follows:

1. Create a new visualization
2. Click on New and select Data Table
3. Select `Logstash-*` under From a New Search, Select Index
4. Select **Buckets** type as Split Rows
5. Select Aggregation as **Terms**

6. Select the **request.keyword** field
7. Set the Size to `10`
8. Click the Play (**Apply Changes**) button

The following screenshot displays the steps to create a new visualization for the top 10 requested URLs:

The screenshot shows the Kibana interface with a visualization titled "logstash-*". The top navigation bar includes "Visualize / Create", "Save", "Share", "Inspect", "Refresh", "Lucene", a date range selector from "May 28, 2014 @ 00:00:00.0" to "Jul 1, 2014 @ 00:00:00.0", and a "Refresh" button. The left sidebar contains sections for "Data", "Options", "Buckets", "Aggregation", "Field", "Order By", "Custom Label", and an "Advanced" link. The main area displays a table titled "Urls" with columns "Urls" and "Total Requests". The data table lists the top 10 URLs with their respective request counts:

Urls	Total Requests
/favicon.ico	18,933
/files/logstash/logstash-1.1.0-monolithic.jar	14,755
/style2.css	12,925
/reset.css	12,821
/images/jordan-80.png	12,521
/images/web/2009/banner.png	12,236
/blog/tags/puppet?flav=rs20	11,379
/	6,295
/presentations/fpm-scale12x.pdf	5,282
?flav=rs20	5,103

At the bottom of the table, there are links for "Export: Raw" and "Formatted".

Save the visualization as [Top 10 URLs](#).

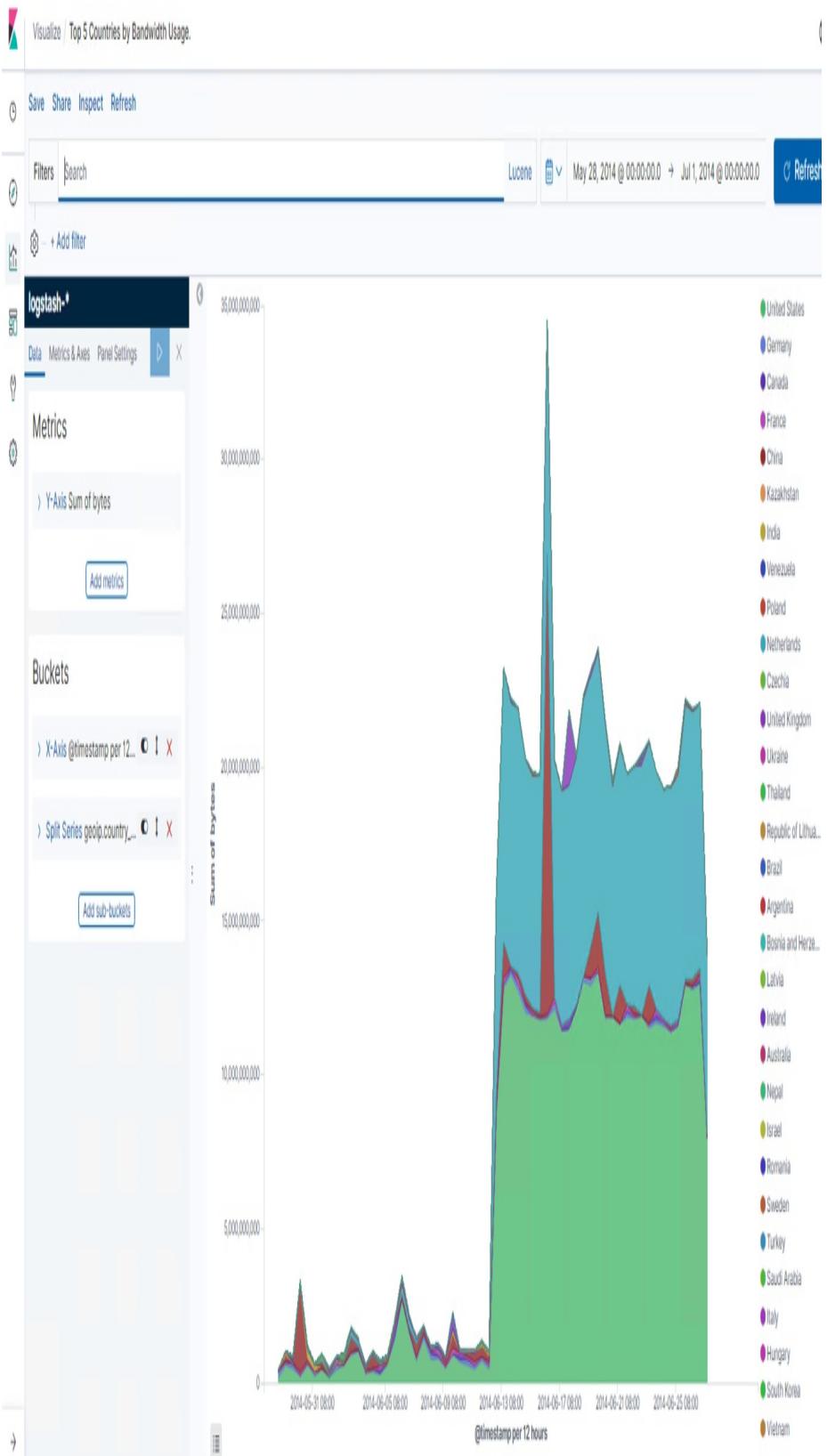
custom_label fields can be used to provide meaningful names for aggregated results. Most of the visualizations support custom labels. Data table visualizations can be exported as a .csv file by clicking the Raw or Formatted links found under the data table visualization.

Bandwidth usage of the top five countries over time

The steps to demonstrate this are as follows:

1. Create a new visualization
2. Click on New and select Area Chart
3. Select `Logstash-*` under From a New Search, Select Index
4. In Y axis, select **Aggregation** type and **Sum of bytes** as the field
5. In X axis, select Date Histogram and @timestamp as the field
6. Click Add sub-buckets and select Split Series
7. Select **Terms** as the Sub Aggregation
8. Select **geoip.country_name.keyword** as the field
9. Click the Play (**Apply Changes**) button

The following screenshot displays the steps to create a new visualization for the bandwidth usage of the top five countries over time:



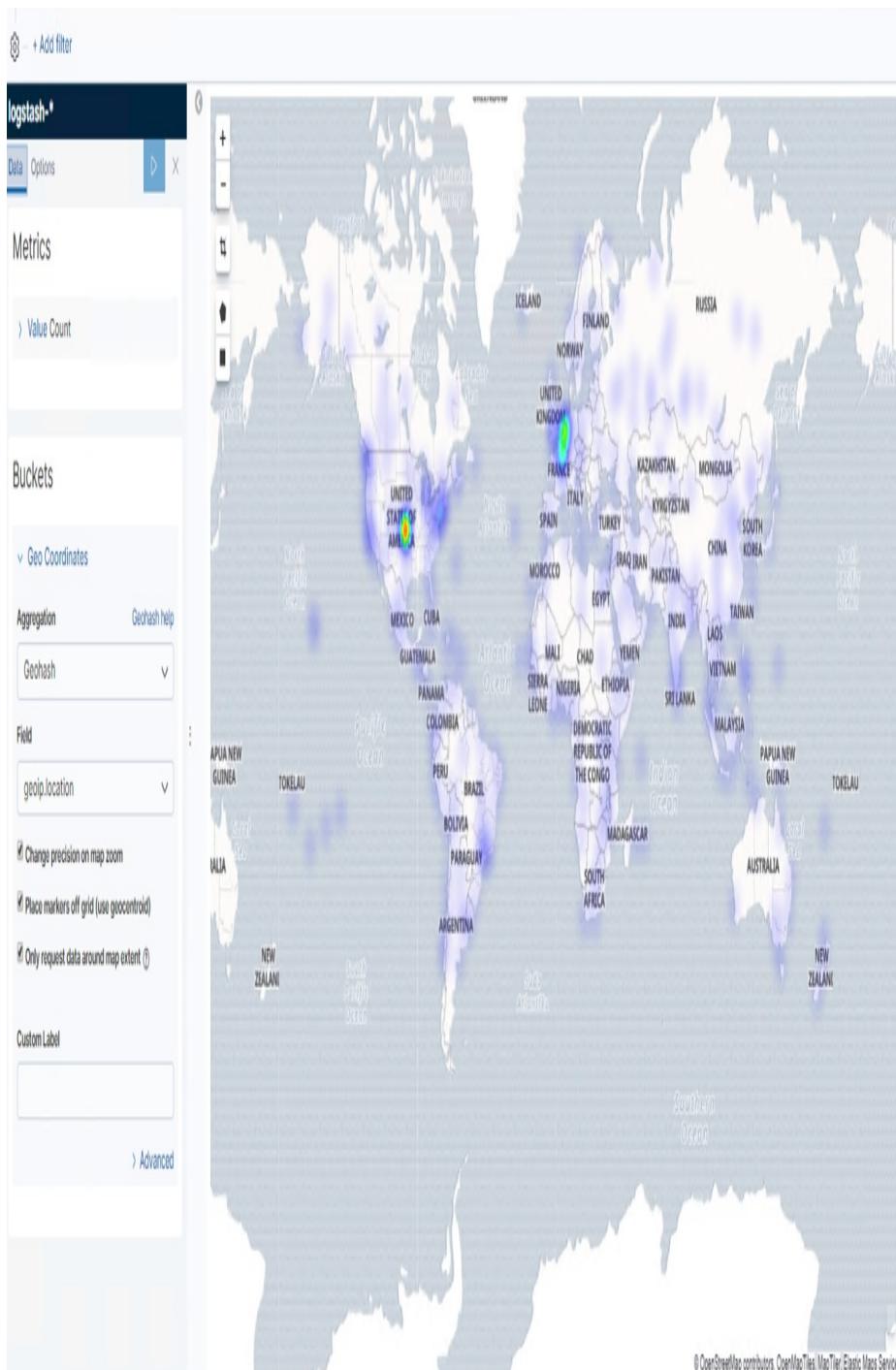
Web traffic originating from different countries

This can be visualized easily using a coordinate map.

The steps are as follows:

1. Create a new visualization
2. Click on New and select Coordinate Map
3. Select `logstash-*` under From a New Search, Select Index
4. Set the bucket type as Geo Coordinates

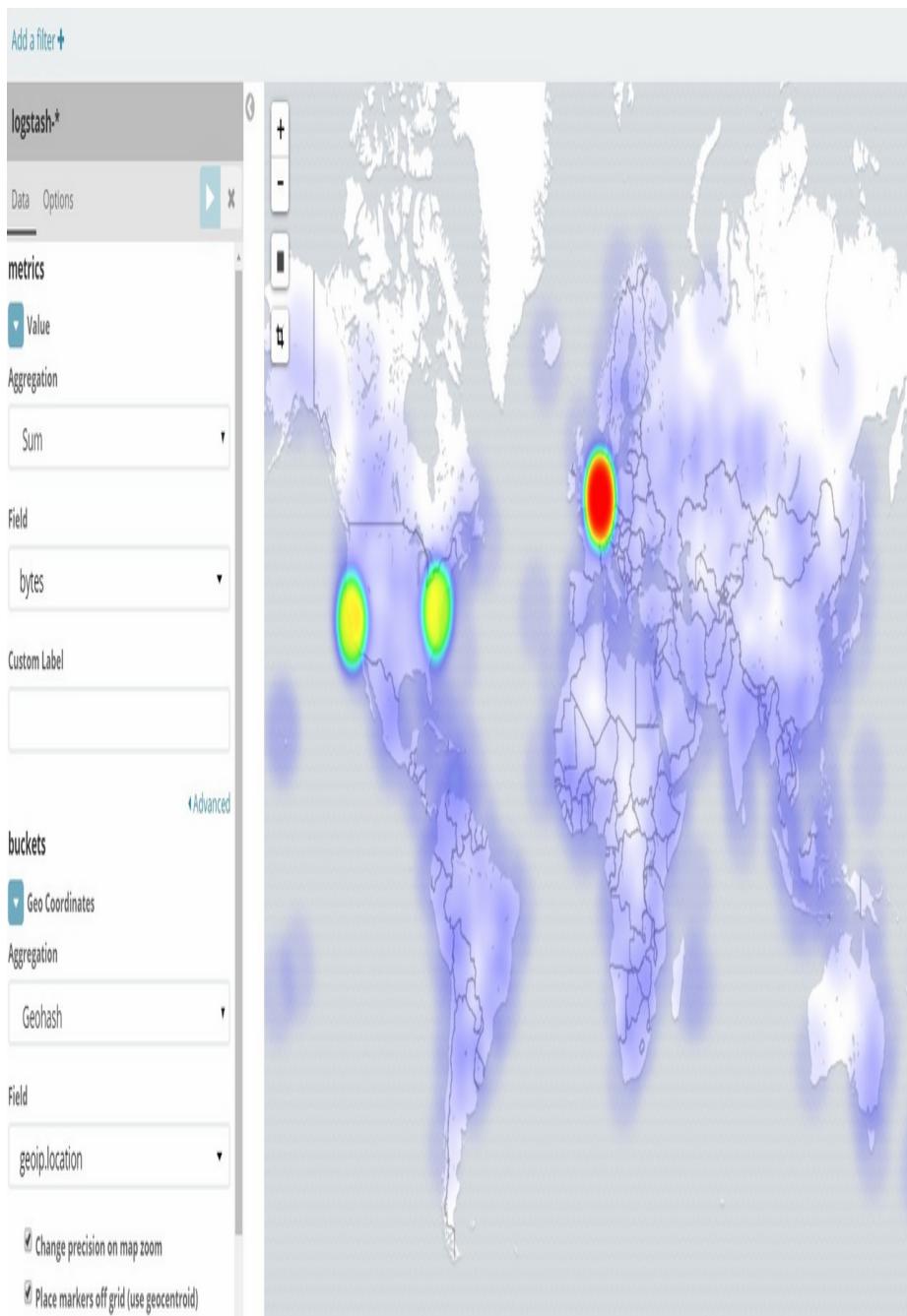
5. Select the **Aggregation** as **Geohash**
6. Select the **geoip.location** field
7. In the **Options** tab, select Map Type as Heatmap
8. Click the Play (**Apply Changes**) button:



Save the visualization as `Traffic By Country`.

Based on this visualization, most of the traffic is originating from California.

For the same visualization, if the metric is changed to bytes, the resulting visualization is as follows:



You can click on the +/- button found at the top-left of the map and zoom in/zoom out.

Using the Draw Rectangle button found at the top-left, below the zoom in and zoom out buttons, you can draw a region for filtering the documents. Then, you can pin the filter and navigate to the Discover page to see the documents belonging to that region.

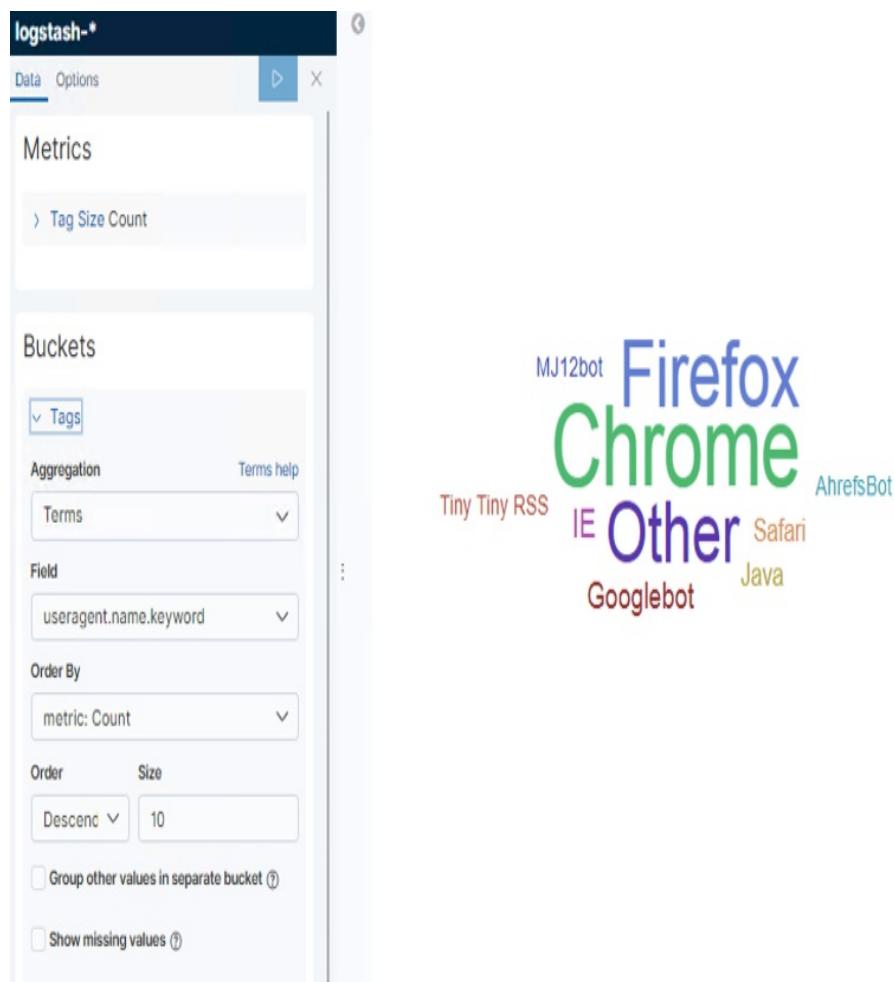
Most used user agent

This can be visualized easily using a variety of charts. Let's use **Tag Cloud**.

The steps are as follows:

1. Create a new visualization
2. Click on New and select Tag Cloud
3. Select `logstash-*` under From a New Search, Select Index

4. Set the bucket type to **Tags**
5. Select the **Terms** aggregation
6. Select the **useragent.name.keyword** field
7. Set the Size to `10` and click the Play (**Apply Changes**) button:

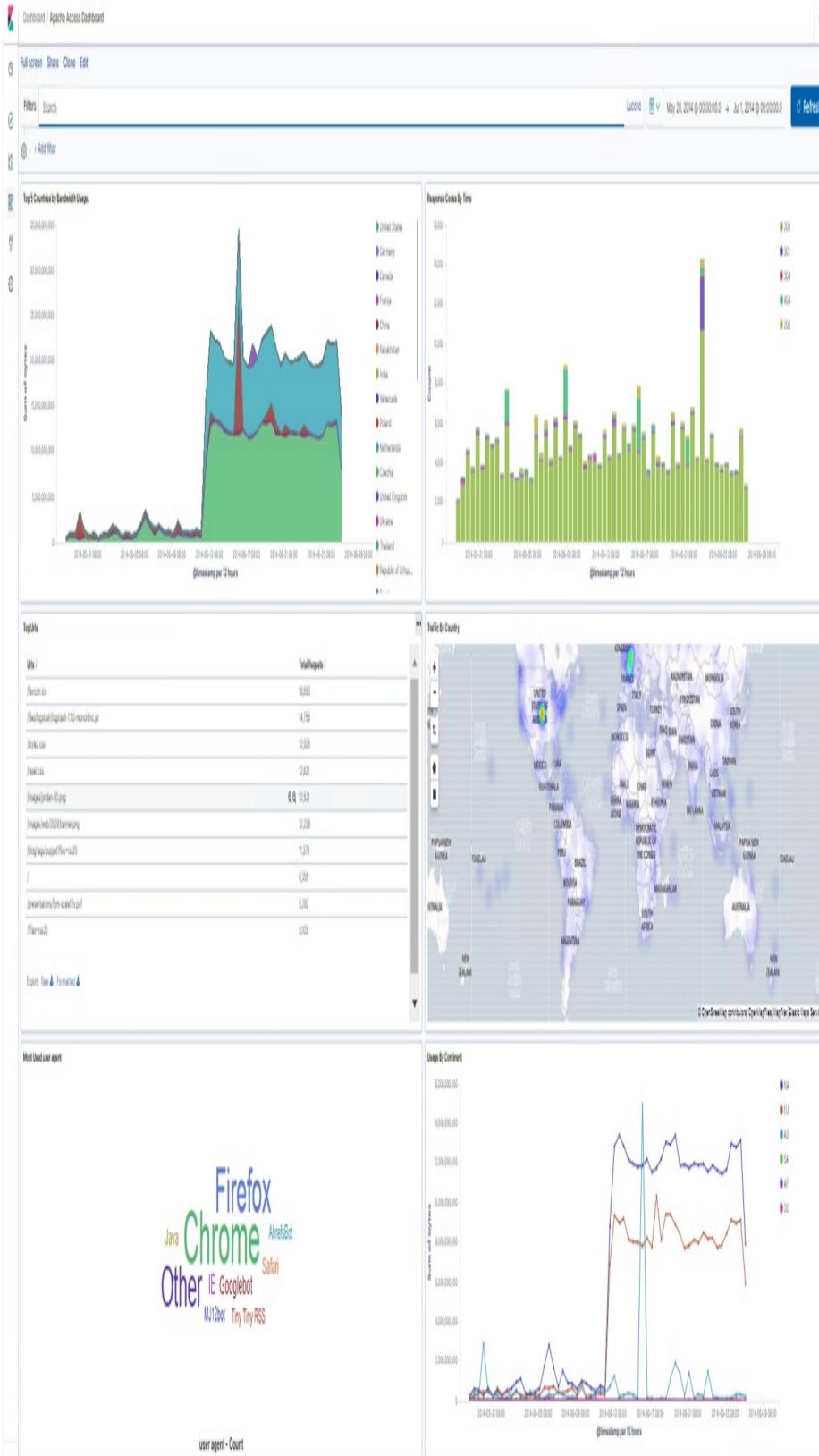


Save the visualization as `Most used user agent`. Chrome, followed by Firefox, is the user agent the majority of traffic is originating from.

Dashboards

Dashboards help you bring different visualizations into a single page. By using previously stored visualizations and saved queries, you can build a dashboard that tells a story about the data.

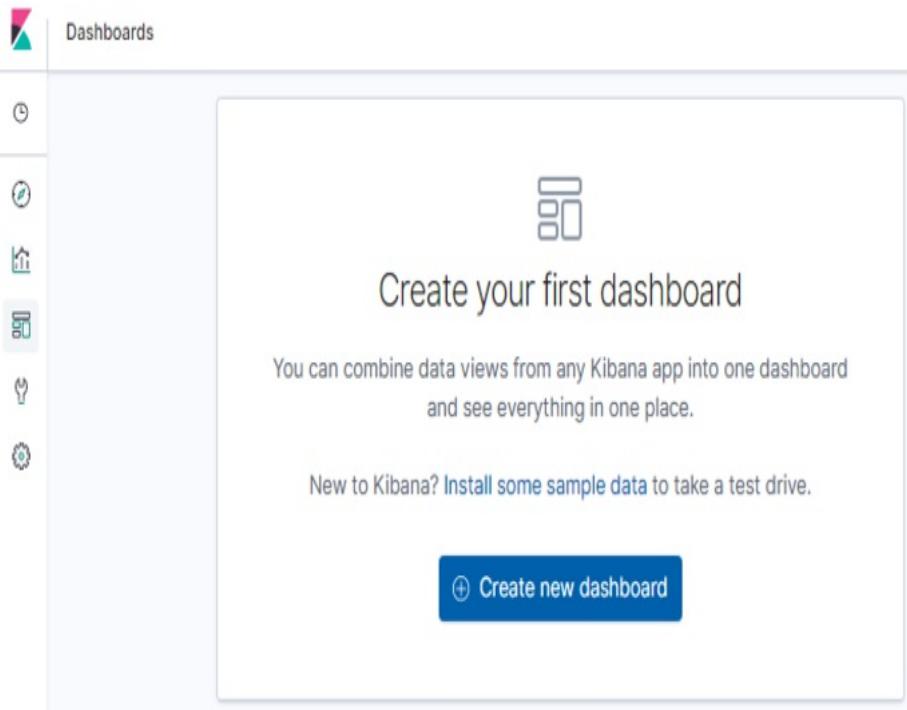
A sample dashboard would look like the following screenshot:



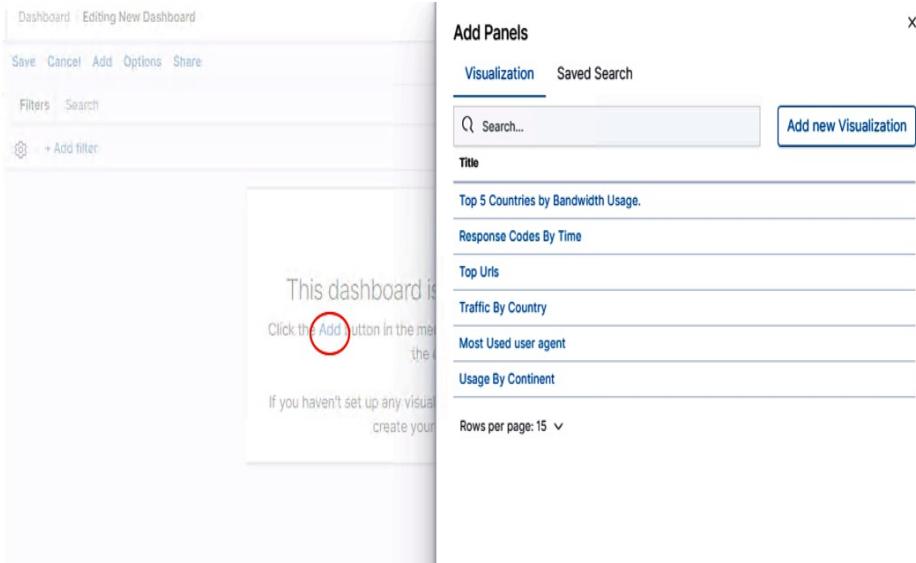
Let's see how we can build a dashboard for our log analysis use case.

Creating a dashboard

In order to create a new dashboard, navigate to the Dashboard page and click the Create a Dashboard button:



On the resulting page, the user can click the Add button, which shows all the stored visualizations and saved searches that are available to be added. Clicking on Saved search/Visualization will result in them getting added to the page, as follows:



The user can expand, edit, rearrange, or remove visualizations using the buttons available at the top corner of each visualization, as follows:

By using the query bar, ...

Saving the dashboard

Once the required visualizations are added to the dashboard, make sure to save the dashboard by clicking the Save button available on the toolbar and provide a title. When a dashboard is saved, all the query criteria and filters get saved, too. If you want to save the time filters, then, while saving the dashboard, select the Store time with dashboard toggle button. Saving the time along with the dashboard might be useful when you want to share/reopen the dashboard in its current state, as follows:

Save dashboard ×

Save as a new dashboard X

Title
Apache Access Dashboard

Description

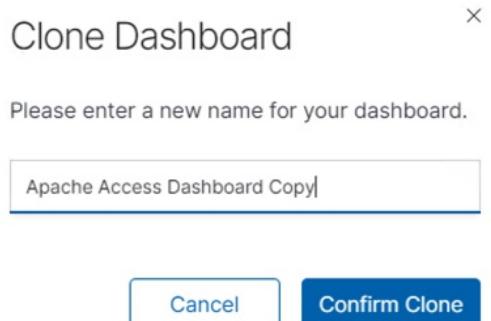
Store time with dashboard

This changes the time filter to the currently selected time each time this dashboard is loaded.

Cancel Confirm Save

Cloning the dashboard

Using the **Clone** feature, you can copy the current dashboard, along with its queries and filters, and create a new dashboard. For example, you might want to create new dashboards for continents or countries, as follows:



Sharing the dashboard

Using the **Share** feature, you can either share a direct link to a Kibana dashboard with another user or embed the dashboard in a web page as an iframe:

The image displays two separate screenshots of the Kibana sharing interface, each showing a "Share" menu with options for generating links.

PERMALINK: This section shows the "Generate the link as" options: Snapshot (selected), Saved object, and Short URL. Below these options is a "Copy link" button.

EMBED CODE: This section shows the same "Generate the link as" options: Snapshot (selected), Saved object, and Short URL. Below these options is a "Copy iFrame code" button.

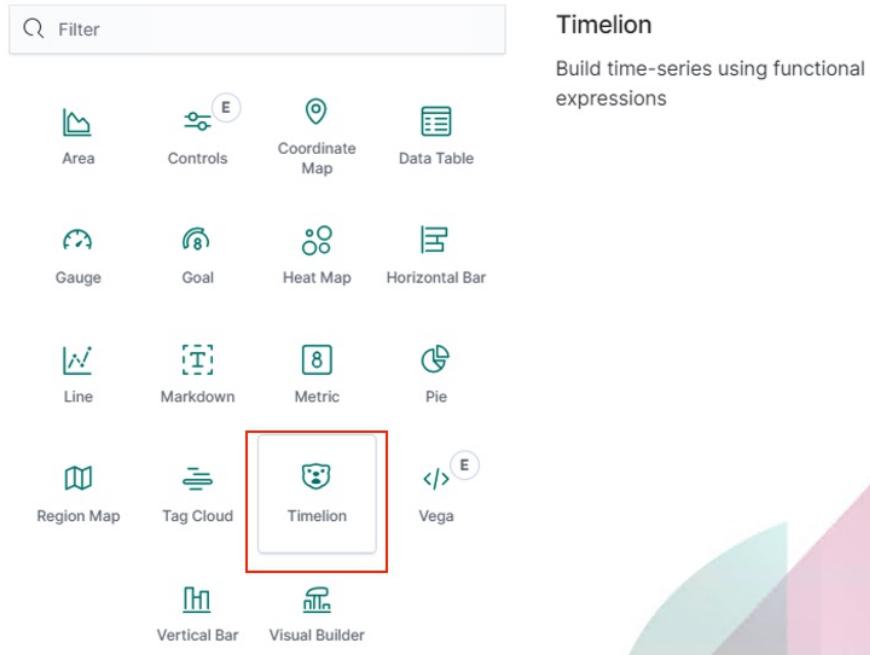
Timelion

Timelion visualizations are special type of visualization for analyzing time-series data in Kibana. They enable you to combine totally independent data sources within the same visualization. Using its simple expression language, you can execute advanced mathematical calculations, such as dividing and subtracting metrics, calculating derivatives and moving averages, and visualize the results of these calculations.

Timelion

Timelion is available just like any other visualization in the **New Visualization** window, as follows:

New Visualization



The main components/features of Timelion visualization are Timelion expressions, which allow you to define expressions that influence the generation of graphs. They allow you to define multiple expressions separated by commas, and also allow you to chain functions.

Timelion expressions

The simplest Timelion expression used for generating graphs is as follows:

```
.es(*)
```

Timelion expressions always start with a dot followed by the function name that can accept one or more parameters. The `.es(*)` expression queries data from all the indexes present in Elasticsearch. By default, it will just count the number of documents, resulting in a graph showing the number of documents over time.

If you'd like to restrict Timelion to data within a specific index (for example, `logstash-*`), you can specify the index within the function as follows:

```
.es(index=logstash-*)
```

As Timelion is a time-series visualizer, it uses the `@timestamp` field present in the index as the time field for plotting the values on an *x* axis. You ...

Using plugins

Plugins are a way to enhance the functionality of Kibana. All the plugins that are installed will be placed in the `$KIBANA_HOME/plugins` folder. Elastic, the company behind Kibana, provides many plugins that can be installed, and there are quite a number of public plugins that are not maintained by Elastic that can be installed, too.

Installing plugins

Navigate to `KIBANA_HOME` and execute the `install` command, as shown in the following code, to install any plugins. During installation, either the name of the plugin can be given (if it's hosted by Elastic itself), or the URL of the location where the plugin is hosted can be given:

```
$ KIBANA_HOME>bin/kibana-plugin install <package name or URL>
```

For example, to install `x-pack`, a plugin developed and maintained by Elastic, execute the following command:

```
$ KIBANA_HOME>bin/kibana-plugin install x-pack
```

To install a public plugin, for example, LogTrail (<https://github.com/sivasamyk/logtrail>), execute the following command:

```
$ KIBANA_HOME>bin/kibana-plugin install  
https://github.com/sivasamyk/logtrail/releases/download/v0.1.31/logtrail-6.7.1-0.1.31.zip  
...
```

Removing plugins

To remove a plugin, navigate to `KIBANA_HOME` and execute the `remove` command followed by the plugin name:

```
$ KIBANA_HOME>bin/kibana-plugin remove x-pack
```

Summary

In this chapter, we covered how to effectively use Kibana to build beautiful dashboards for effective storytelling about your data.

We learned how to configure Kibana to visualize data from Elasticsearch. We also looked at how to add custom plugins to Kibana.

In the next chapter, we will cover ElasticSearch and the core components that help when building data pipelines. We will also cover visualizing data to add the extensions needed for specific use cases.

Section 3: Elastic Stack Extensions

This small section will give you insights into the set of extensions that are developed and maintained by Elastic Stack's developers. You will find out how to incorporate security, monitor Elasticsearch, and add alerting functionalities to your work.

This section includes one chapter:

- [Chapter 8, Elastic X-Pack](#)

Elastic X-Pack

X-Pack is an Elastic Stack extension that bundles security, alerting, monitoring, reporting, machine learning, and graph capabilities into one easy-to-install package. It adds essential features to make Elastic Stack production-ready. Unlike the components of Elastic Stack, which are open source, X-Pack is a commercial offering from [Elastic.co](#), and so it requires a paid license so that it can be used. When you install X-Pack for the first time, you are given a 30-day trial. Even though X-Pack comes as a bundle, it allows you to easily enable or disable the features you want to use. In this chapter, we won't be covering all the features provided by X-Pack, but we will be covering the important features that an X-Pack beginner ...

Installing Elasticsearch and Kibana with X-Pack

Prior to Elastic 6.3, X-Pack was an extension of Elastic Stack that could have been installed on top of Elasticsearch or Kibana. Now, Elasticsearch and Kibana come in two flavors:

- OSS version, that is, Apache 2.0 License
- Elastic license

If X-Pack isn't available with the OSS version, then you have to download Elasticsearch and Kibana with the Elastic license. When you download Elasticsearch or Kibana with the Elastic license, all the basic features are available for free by default. The paid features can be used as a trial for 30 days; post that time period, a license has to be bought.

To see a list of all the features that are available for free and the features that are paid, go to <https://www.elastic.co/subscriptions>.

Installation

In order to explore X-Pack and its features, we will need to download Elasticsearch and Kibana with Elastic license.

You can download Elasticsearch from <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/past-releases/elasticsearch-7-0-0>.

You can download Kibana from <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/past-releases/kibana-7-0-0>.

Please refer to [chapter 1, Introducing Elastic Stack](#), for installation instructions for Elasticsearch and [chapter 7, Visualizing Data with Kibana](#), for installation instructions for Kibana.

Before installation, please make sure to stop any existing running instances of Elastic Stack components.

When you start Elasticsearch, you should see X-Pack-related plugins getting loaded and new files getting created under the `ES_HOME/config` ...

Activating X-Pack trial account

In order to activate all the X-Pack paid features, we need to enable the trial account, which is valid for 30 days. Let's go ahead and activate it.

Click on the Management icon on the left-hand side menu and click on License Management. Then, click on Start Trial, as follows:

The screenshot shows the Elasticsearch Management interface. On the left, there is a sidebar with various icons and sections: Elasticsearch (Index Management, Index Lifecycle Policies, Rollup Jobs, Cross Cluster Replication, Remote Clusters, License Management, 8.0 Upgrade Assistant), Kibana (Index Patterns, Saved Objects, Spaces, Reporting, Advanced Settings), and Management. The 'License Management' section is highlighted with a red box. The main content area displays a message: 'Your Basic license is inactive' with a note 'Your license will never expire.' Below this are two buttons: 'Update your license' (with a note 'If you already have a new license, upload it now.') and 'Start a 30-day trial' (with a note 'Experience what security, machine learning, and all our other Platinum features have to offer.'). The 'Start trial' button is also highlighted with a red box.

Click on the Start my Trial button in the resultant popup, as follows:

×

Start your free 30-day trial

This trial is for the full set of [Platinum features](#) of the Elastic Stack. You'll get immediate access to:

- Machine learning
- Alerting
- Graph capabilities
- JDBC and ODBC connectivity for SQL

Security features, such as authentication (native, AD/LDAP, SAML, PKI), role-based access control, and auditing, require configuration. See the [documentation](#) for instructions.

By starting this trial, you agree that it is subject to these [terms and conditions](#).



Send basic feature usage statistics to Elastic periodically. [Read more](#)

[Cancel](#)

[Start my trial](#)

On successful activation, you should see the status of the license as Active. At any point in time before the trial ends, you can go ahead and revert back to the basic license by clicking on the Revert to Basic button:

Your Trial license is active

Your license will expire on June 20, 2019 10:49 AM +08

Update your license

If you already have a new license, upload it now.

Extend your trial

If you'd like to continue using security, machine learning, and our other awesome Platinum features, request an extension now.

Revert to Basic license

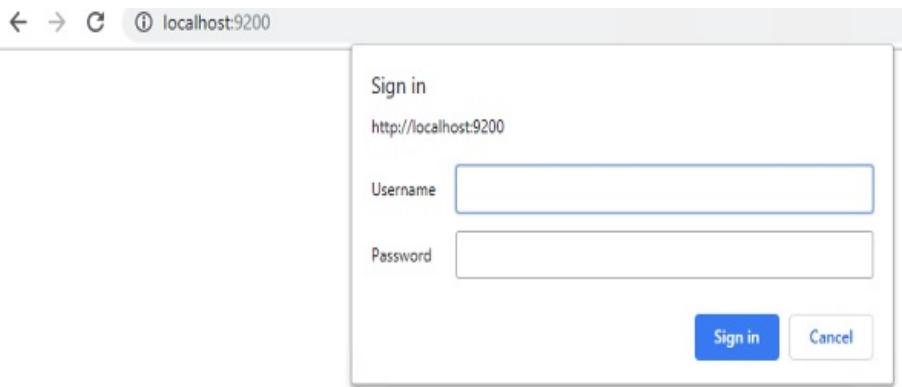
You'll revert to our free features and lose access to security, machine learning and other Platinum features.

Open `elasticsearch.yml`, which can be found under the `$ES_HOME/config` folder, and add the following line at the end of the file to enable X-Pack and restart Elasticsearch and Kibana:

```
xpack.security.enabled: true
```

If the Elasticsearch cluster has multiple nodes, then the `xpack.security.enabled: true` property must be set in each of the nodes and restarted.

Now, when you try to access Elasticsearch via `http://localhost:9200`, the user will be prompted for login credentials, as shown in the following screenshot:



Similarly, if you see the logs of Kibana in the Terminal, it would fail to connect to Elasticsearch due to authentication issues and won't come up until we set the right credentials in the `kibana.yml` file.

Go ahead and stop Kibana. Let Elasticsearch run. Now that X-Pack is enabled and security is in place, how do we know what credentials to use to log in? We will look at this in the next section.

Generating passwords for default users

Elastic Stack security comes with default users and a built-in credential helper to set up security with ease and have things up and running quickly. Open up another Terminal and navigate to `ES_HOME`. Let's generate the passwords for the reserved/default users—`elastic`, `kibana`, `apm_system`, `remote_monitoring_user`, `beats_system`, and `logstash_system`—by executing the following command:

```
$ ES_HOME>bin/elasticsearch-setup-passwords interactive
```

You should get the following logs/prompts to enter the password for the reserved/default users:

```
Initiating the setup of passwords for reserved users  
elastic,apm_system,kibana,logstash_system,beats_system,remote_monitoring_user.You  
will be prompted to enter passwords as ...
```

Configuring X-Pack

X-Pack comes bundled with security, alerting, monitoring, reporting, machine learning, and graph capabilities. By default, all of these features are enabled. However, you might not be interested in all of the features it provides. You can selectively enable and disable the features that you are interested in from the `elasticsearch.yml` and `kibana.yml` configuration files.

Elasticsearch supports the following features and settings in the `elasticsearch.yml` file:

Feature	Setting	Description
Machine learning	<code>xpack.ml.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable X-Pack machine learning features
Monitoring	<code>xpack.monitoring.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable Elasticsearch's monitoring features
Security	<code>xpack.security.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable X-Pack security features
Watcher	<code>xpack.watcher.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable Watcher

Kibana supports the following features and settings in the `kibana.yml` file:

Feature	Setting	Description
Machine learning	<code>xpack.ml.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable X-Pack machine learning features
Monitoring	<code>xpack.monitoring.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable Kibana's monitoring features
Security	<code>xpack.security.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable X-Pack security features
Graph	<code>xpack.graph.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable X-Pack graph features
Reporting	<code>xpack.reporting.enabled</code>	Set this to false to disable X-Pack reporting features

If X-Pack is installed on Logstash, you can disable monitoring by setting the `xpack.monitoring.enabled` property to false in the `logstash.yml` configuration file.

Securing Elasticsearch and Kibana

The components of Elastic Stack are unsecured, as it doesn't have inherent security built into it; this means it can be accessed by anyone. This poses a security risk when running Elastic Stack in production. In order to prevent unauthorized access in production, different mechanisms of imposing security, such as running Elastic Stack behind a firewall and securing via reverse proxies (such as nginx, HAProxy, and so on), are employed. Elastic.co offers a commercial product to secure Elastic Stack. This offering is part of X-Pack and the module is called **Security**.

The X-Pack security module provides the following ways to secure Elastic Stack:

- User authentication and user authorization
- Node/Client authentication ...

User authentication

User authentication is the process of validating the user and thus preventing unauthorized access to the Elastic Cluster. In the X-Pack security module, the authentication process is handled by one or more authentication services called **realms**. The `Security` module provides two types of realms, namely internal realms and external realms.

The two types of built-in internal realms are `native` and `file`. The `native` realm is the default realm, and the user credentials are stored in a special index called `.security-7` on Elasticsearch itself. These users are managed using the **User Management API** or the Management page of the Kibana UI. We will be exploring this in more detail later in this chapter.

If the realm is of the `file` type, then the user credentials are stored in a file on each node. These users are managed via dedicated tools that are provided by X-Pack. These tools can be found at `$ES_HOME\bin\`. The files are stored under the `$ES_HOME\config` folder. Since the credentials are stored in a file, it is the responsibility of the administrator to create users with the same credentials on each node.

The built-in external realms are `ldap`, `active_directory`, and `pki`, which use the external LDAP server, the external Active Directory Server, and the Public Key Infrastructure, respectively, to authenticate users.

Depending on the realms that have been configured, the user credentials need to be attached to the requests that are sent to Elasticsearch. Realms live within a realm chain. The realm's order is configured in the `elasticsearch.yml` file and determines the order in which realms are consulted during the authentication process. Each realm is consulted one by one based on the order defined until the authentication is successful. Once one of the realms successfully authenticates the request, the authentication is considered to be successful. If none of the realms are able to authenticate the user, then the authentication is considered unsuccessful and an authentication error (**HTTP 401**) will be returned to the caller. The default realm chain consists of internal realm types, that is, `native` and `file`.

If none of these realms are specified in `elasticsearch.yml`, then the default realm that's used is `native`. To use the `file` type realm or external realms, they need to be specified in the `elasticsearch.yml` file.

For example, the following snippet shows the configuration for the realm chain containing `native`, `file`, and `ldap`:

```
xpack.security.authc:  
  realms:  
    native:  
      type: native  
      order: 0
```

```
file:  
  type: file  
  order: 1  
  
ldap_server:  
  type: ldap  
  order: 2  
  url: 'url_to_ldap_server'
```

To disable a specific realm type, use the `enabled:false` property, as shown in the following example:

```
ldap_server:  
  type: ldap  
  order: 2  
  enabled: false  
  url: 'url_to_ldap_server'
```

User authorization

Once the user has been successfully authenticated, the authorization process kicks in. Authorization determines whether the user behind the request has enough permissions to execute a particular request.

In X-Pack security, **secured resources** are the foundation of user-based security. A secured resource is a resource that needs access, such as indexes, documents, or fields, to perform Elasticsearch cluster operations. X-Pack security enables authorization by assigning permissions to roles that are assigned to users. A permission is one or more privileges against a secured resource. A privilege is a named group representing one or more actions that a user may execute against a secured resource. A user can have one or more ...

Security in action

In this section, we will look into creating new users, creating new roles, and associating roles with users. Let's import some sample data and use it to understand how security works.

Save the following data to a file named `data.json`:

```
{"index" : {"_index":"employee"}}
{ "name":"user1", "email":"user1@packt.com", "salary":5000, "gender":"M", "address1":"312
Main St", "address2":"Walthill", "state":"NE"}
{"index" : {"_index":"employee"}}
{ "name":"user2", "email":"user2@packt.com", "salary":10000, "gender":"F",
"address1":"5658 N Denver Ave", "address2":"Portland", "state":"OR"}
{"index" : {"_index":"employee"}}
{ "name":"user3", "email":"user3@packt.com", "salary":7000, "gender":"F", "address1":"300
Quinterra Ln", "address2":"Danville", "state":"CA"}
{"index" : {"_index":"department", "_type":"department"}}
{ "name":"IT", "employees":50 }
{"index" : {"_index":"department", "_type":"department"}}
{ "name":"SALES", "employees":500 }
{"index" : {"_index":"department", "_type":"department"}}
{ "name":"SUPPORT", "employees":100 }
```

The `_bulk` API requires the last line of the file to end with the newline character, `\n`. While saving the file, make sure that you have a newline as the last line of the file.

Navigate to the directory where the file is stored and execute the following command to import the data into Elasticsearch:

```
$ directory_of_data_file> curl -s -H "Content-Type: application/json" -u elastic:elastic -
XPOST http://localhost:9200/_bulk --data-binary @data.json
```

To check whether the import was successful, execute the following command and validate the count of documents:

```
curl -s -H "Content-Type: application/json" -u elastic:elastic -XGET
http://localhost:9200/employee,department/_count
{"count":6, "_shards":{"total":10, "successful":10, "skipped":0, "failed":0}}
```

Creating a new user

Let's explore the creation of a new user in this section. Log in to Kibana (<http://localhost:5601>) as the `elastic` user:

1. To create a new user, navigate to the Management UI and select Users in the Security section:

The screenshot shows the Elasticsearch Management interface with the URL `localhost:5601/app/kibana#/management/security/users?g=0`. The left sidebar has a tree view with nodes for Elasticsearch, Kibana, Logstash, Beats, and Security. The Security node is expanded, and its 'Users' sub-node is selected and highlighted with a red border. The main content area is titled 'Users' and displays a table of users. The table has columns: Full Name ↑, User Name, Email Address, Roles, and Reserved. The data in the table is as follows:

Full Name ↑	User Name	Email Address	Roles	Reserved
	elastic		superuser	✓
	kibana		kibana_system	✓
	logstash_system		logstash_system	✓
	beats_system		beats_system	✓
	apm_system		apm_system	✓
	remote_monitoring_user		remote_monitoring_collector, remote_monitoring_agent	✓

Below the table, there is a search bar labeled 'Search...' and a button labeled 'Create new user'. A note at the bottom says 'Rows per page: 20 ✓'.

2. The Users screen displays the available users and their roles. By default, it displays the default/reserved users that are part of the native X-Pack security realm:

Users

Create new user

Search... Default Users

Full Name ↑	User Name	Email Address	Roles	Reserved
	elastic		superuser	✓
	kibana		kibana_system	✓
	logstash_system		logstash_system	✓
	beats_system		beats_system	✓
	apm_system		apm_system	✓
	remote_monitoring_user		remote_monitoring_collector, remote_monitoring_agent	✓

Rows per page: 20 ✓

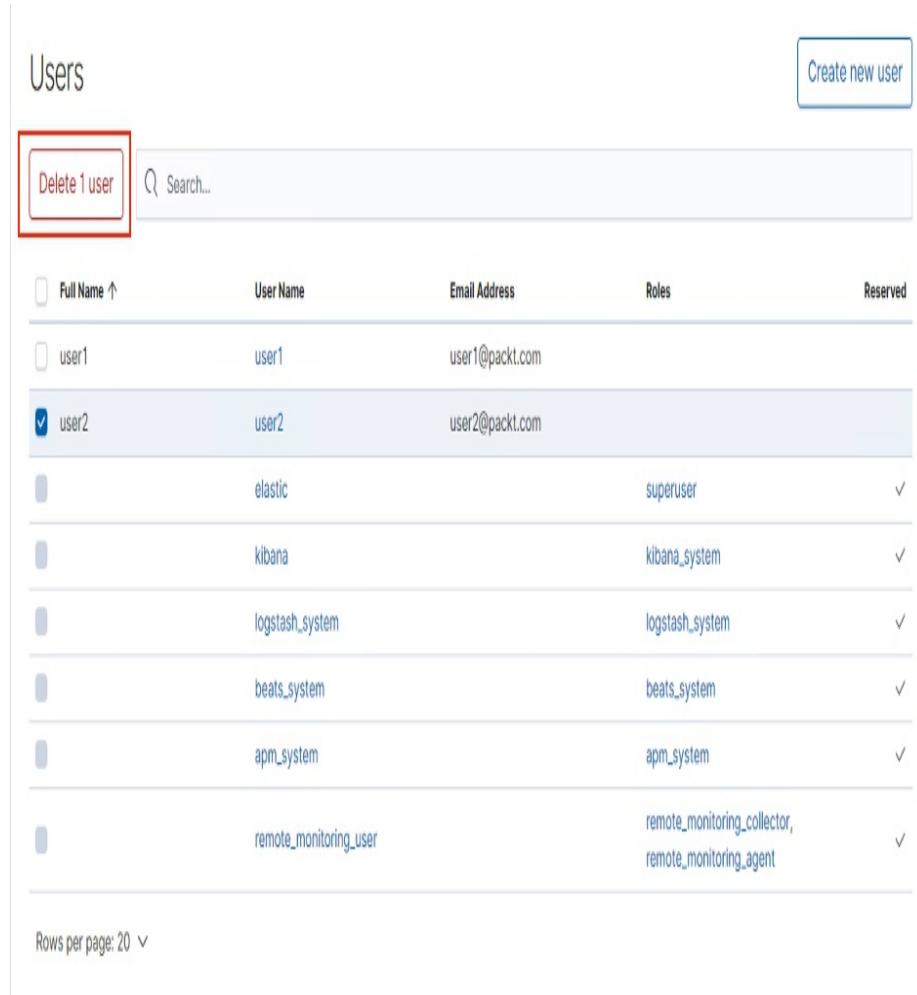
The screenshot shows the 'Users' section of the Elasticsearch interface. At the top right is a blue 'Create new user' button with a red border. Below it is a search bar with placeholder text 'Search...'. The title 'Default Users' is in red. A table lists seven default users: elastic, kibana, logstash_system, beats_system, apm_system, and remote_monitoring_user. The 'User Name' column header and the first row ('elastic') are highlighted with a red border. The table has columns for Full Name (sorted by User Name), User Name, Email Address, Roles, and Reserved status.

3. To create a new user, click on the Create new user button and enter the required details, as shown in the following screenshot. Then, click on

...

Deleting a user

To delete a role, navigate to Users UI, select the custom `user2` that you created, and click on the **Delete** button. You cannot delete built-in users:



The screenshot shows the 'Users' page in the Elasticsearch interface. At the top right, there is a 'Create new user' button. Below it, a search bar contains the placeholder 'Search...'. On the left, a button labeled 'Delete 1 user' is highlighted with a red box. The main area displays a table of users with the following columns: Full Name ↑, User Name, Email Address, Roles, and Reserved. The table lists the following users:

Full Name ↑	User Name	Email Address	Roles	Reserved
user1	user1	user1@packt.com		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> user2	user2	user2@packt.com		
elastic			superuser	✓
kibana			kibana_system	✓
logstash_system			logstash_system	✓
beats_system			beats_system	✓
apm_system			apm_system	✓
remote_monitoring_user			remote_monitoring_collector, remote_monitoring_agent	✓

At the bottom left, there is a 'Rows per page: 20' dropdown.

Changing the password

Navigate to the Users UI and select the custom user for which the password needs to be changed. This will take you to the User Details page. You can edit the user's details, change their password, or delete the user from the user details screen. To change the user's password, click on the Change password link and enter the new password details. Then, click on the Update user button:

Edit user1 user

Username
user1

Username's cannot be changed after creation.

Full name
user1

Email address
user1@packt.com

Roles
Add roles ▾

Password
[Change password](#)

[Update user](#) [Cancel](#) [Delete user](#)

The passwords must be a minimum of 6 characters long.

Creating a new role

To create a new user, navigate to the Management UI and select Roles in the Security section, or if you are currently on the Users screen, click on the Roles tab. The Roles screen displays all the roles that are defined/available. By default, it displays the built-in/reserved roles that are part of the X-Pack security native realm:

Role	Reserved
apm_system	✓
apm_user	✓
beats_admin	✓
beats_system	✓
code_admin	✓
code_user	✓
ingest_admin	✓
kibana_dashboard_only_user	✓
kibana_system	✓
kibana_user	✓
logstash_admin	✓
logstash_system	✓
machine_learning_admin	✓
machine_learning_user	✓
monitoring_user	✓
remote_monitoring_agent	✓
remote_monitoring_collector	✓
reporting_user	✓
rollup_admin	✓
rollup_user	✓

X-Pack security also provides a set of built-in roles that can be assigned to

users. These roles are reserved and the privileges associated with these roles cannot be updated. Some of the built-in roles are as follows:

- `kibana_system`: This role grants the necessary access to read from and write to Kibana indexes, manage index templates, and check the availability of the Elasticsearch cluster. This role also grants read access for monitoring (`.monitoring-*`) and read-write access to reporting (`.reporting-*`) indexes. The default user, `kibana`, has these privileges.
- `superuser`: This role grants access for performing all operations on clusters, indexes, and data. This role also grants rights to create/modify users or roles. The default user, `elastic`, has superuser privileges.
- `ingest_admin`: This role grants permissions so that you can manage all pipeline configurations and all index templates.

To find the complete list of built-in roles and their descriptions, please refer to <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/x-pack/master/built-in-roles.html>.

Users with the superuser role can create custom roles and assign them to the users using the Kibana UI.

Let's create a new role with a **Cluster privilege** called `monitor` and assign it to `user1` so that the user can cluster read-only operations such as cluster state, cluster health, nodes info, nodes stats, and more.

Click on the Create role button in the Roles page/tab and fill in the details that are shown in the following screenshot:

Create role

Set privileges on your Elasticsearch data and control access to your Kibana spaces.

Role name

monitor_role

Elasticsearch

Cluster privileges

Manage the actions this role can perform against your cluster. Learn more

monitor X

Run As privileges

Allow requests to be submitted on behalf of other users. Learn more

Add a user...

Index privileges

Control access to the data in your cluster. Learn more

Indices	Privileges	Granted fields (optional)

Grant read privileges to specific documents

[Add index privilege](#)

Kibana

Minimum privileges for all spaces

Specify the minimum actions users can perform in your spaces.

none

No access to spaces

Higher privileges for individual spaces

Grant more privileges on a per space basis. For example, if the privileges are **read** for all spaces, you can set the privileges to **all** for an individual space.

[Add space privilege](#)

[View summary of spaces](#)

Create role Cancel

To assign the newly created role to `user1`, click on the Users tab and select `user1`. In the User Details page, from the roles dropdown, select the `monitor_role` role and click on the Save button, as shown in the following screenshot:

Edit user1 user

Username

Username's cannot be changed after creation.

Full name

Email address

Roles

▼

- monitor_role**
- monitoring_user
- remote_monitoring_agent
- remote_monitoring_collector

Update user **Cancel** **Delete user**

A user can be assigned multiple roles.

Now, let's validate that `user1` can access some cluster/node details APIs:

```
curl -u user1:password "http://localhost:9200/_cluster/health?pretty"
{
  "cluster_name" : "elasticsearch",
  "status" : "yellow",
  "timed_out" : false,
  "number_of_nodes" : 1,
  "number_of_data_nodes" : 1,
  "active_primary_shards" : 5,
  "active_shards" : 5,
  "relocating_shards" : 0,
  "initializing_shards" : 0,
  "unassigned_shards" : 2,
  "delayed_unassigned_shards" : 0,
  "number_of_pending_tasks" : 0,
  "number_of_in_flight_fetch" : 0,
  "task_max_waiting_in_queue_millis" : 0,
  "active_shards_percent_as_number" : 71.42857142857143
}
```

Let's also execute the same command that we executed when we created `user2`, but without assigning any roles to it, and see the difference:

```
curl -u user2:password "http://localhost:9200/_cluster/health?pretty"
{
  "error" : {
```

```
    "root_cause" : [
      {
        "type" : "security_exception",
        "reason" : "action [cluster:monitor/main] is unauthorized for user [user2]"
      }
    ],
    "type" : "security_exception",
    "reason" : "action [cluster:monitor/main] is unauthorized for user [user2]"
  },
  "status" : 403
}
```

Deleting or editing a role

To delete a role, navigate to the Roles UI/tab, select the custom role that we created, and click on **Delete**. You cannot delete built-in roles:

Roles

Apply roles to groups of users and manage permissions across the stack

Search...		<input type="button" value="Delete"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Role ↑		Reserved ⓘ
apm_system	✓	
apm_user	✓	
beats_admin	✓	
beats_system	✓	
code_admin	✓	
code_user	✓	
ingest_admin	✓	
kibana_dashboard_only_user	✓	
kibana_system	✓	
kibana_user	✓	
logstash_admin	✓	
logstash_system	✓	
machine_learning_admin	✓	
machine_learning_user	✓	
monitor_role		

To edit a role, navigate to the Roles UI/tab and click on the custom role that needs to be edited. The user is taken to the Roles Details page. Make the required changes in the Privileges section and click on the Update role button.

You can also delete the role from this page:

Edit role

Set privileges on your Elasticsearch data and control access to your Kibana spaces.

Role name

monitor_role

A role's name cannot be changed once it has been created.



hide

Cluster privileges

Manage the actions this role can perform against your cluster. [Learn more](#)

monitor X manage X



v

Run As privileges

Allow requests to be submitted on the behalf of other users. [Learn more](#)

Add a user...



Index privileges

Control access to the data in your cluster. [Learn more](#)

Indices

▼

Privileges

▼

Granted fields (optional)

* X
▼

Grant read privileges to specific documents

[+ Add index privilege](#)



hide

Minimum privileges for all spaces

Specify the minimum actions users can perform in your spaces.

none
▼

No access to spaces

Higher privileges for individual spaces

Grant more privileges on a per space basis. For example, if the privileges are **read** for all spaces, you can set the privileges to **all** for an individual space.

[+ Add space privilege](#)

[View summary of spaces pri](#)

[Update role](#)

Cancel

De

Document-level security or field-level security

Now that we know how to create a new user, create a new role, and assign roles to a user, let's explore how security can be imposed on documents and fields for a given index/document.

The sample data that we imported previously, at the beginning of this chapter, contained two indexes: `employee` and `department`. Let's use these indexes and understand the document-level security with two use cases.

Use case 1: When a user searches for employee details, the user should not be able to find the salary/address details contained in the documents belonging to the `employee` index.

This is where field-level security helps. Let's create a new role (`employee_read`) with `read` index privileges on the `employee` index. To restrict the fields, type the actual field names that are allowed to be accessed by the user in the Granted Fields section, as shown in the following screenshot, and click the Create role button:

Create role

Set privileges on your Elasticsearch data and control access to your Kibana spaces.

Role name

employee_read

 Elasticsearch [hide](#)

Cluster privileges

Manage the actions this role can perform against your cluster. [Learn more](#)

Run As privileges

Allow requests to be submitted on the behalf of other users. [Learn more](#)

Index privileges

Control access to the data in your cluster. [Learn more](#)

Indices	Privileges	Granted fields (optional)
employee X	read X	gender X state X email X

Grant read privileges to specific documents

[Add index privilege](#)

*When creating a role, you can specify the same set of privileges on multiple indexes by adding one or more index names to the Indices field, or you can specify different privileges for different indexes by clicking on the **Add index privilege** button that's found in the Index privileges section.*

Assign the newly created role to `user2`:

Edit user2 user

Username

Username's cannot be changed after creation.

Full name

Email address

Roles



▼

Password

[Change password](#)

[Update user](#)

[Cancel](#)

[Delete user](#)

Now, let's search in the employee index and check what fields were returned in the response. As we can see in the following response, we have successfully restricted the user from accessing salary and address details:

```
curl -u user2:password "http://localhost:9200/employee/_search?pretty"
{
  "took" : 1,
  "timed_out" : false,
  "_shards" : {
    "total" : 1,
    "successful" : 1,
    "skipped" : 0,
    "failed" : 0
  },
  "hits" : {
    "total" : {
      "value" : 3,
      "relation" : "eq"
    },
    "max_score" : 1.0,
    "hits" : [
      {
        "_index" : "employee",
        "_type" : "_doc",
        "_id" : "xsTc2GoBlyaBuhcfU42x",
        "_score" : 1.0,
        "name" : "John Doe",
        "age" : 30,
        "city" : "New York"
      }
    ]
  }
}
```

```

    "_source" : {
      "gender" : "M",
      "state" : "NE",
      "email" : "user1@packt.com"
    }
  },
  {
    "_index" : "employee",
    "_type" : "_doc",
    "_id" : "x8Tc2GoBlyaBuhcfU42x",
    "_score" : 1.0,
    "_source" : {
      "gender" : "F",
      "state" : "OR",
      "email" : "user2@packt.com"
    }
  },
  {
    "_index" : "employee",
    "_type" : "_doc",
    "_id" : "yMTc2GoBlyaBuhcfU42x",
    "_score" : 1.0,
    "_source" : {
      "gender" : "F",
      "state" : "CA",
      "email" : "user3@packt.com"
    }
  }
]
}

```

Use case 2: We want to have a multi-tenant index and restrict certain documents to certain users. For example, `user1` should be able to search in the `department` index and retrieve only documents belonging to the `IT` department.

Let's create a role, `department_IT_role`, and provide the `read` privilege for the `department` index. To restrict the documents, specify the query in the `Granted Documents Query` section. The query should be in the **Elasticsearch Query DSL** format:

Create role

Set privileges on your Elasticsearch data and control access to your Kibana spaces.

Role name

The role name field is highlighted with a red border.



Cluster privileges

Manage the actions this role can perform against your cluster. [Learn more](#)

Run As privileges

Allow requests to be submitted on the behalf of other users. [Learn more](#)

Index privileges

Control access to the data in your cluster. [Learn more](#)

Indices	Privileges	Granted fields (optional)
department X	read X	* X

Grant read privileges to specific documents

Granted documents query

```
{"match":{"name":"IT"}}
```

Associate the newly created role with `user1`:

Edit user1 user

Username

Username's cannot be changed after creation.

Full name

Email address

Roles

× ▼

Password

[Change password](#)

[Update user](#)

[Cancel](#)

[Delete user](#)

Let's verify that it is working as expected by executing a search against the `department` index using the `user1` credentials:

```
curl -u user1:password "http://localhost:9200/department/_search?pretty"
{
  "took" : 19,
  "timed_out" : false,
  "_shards" : {
    "total" : 1,
    "successful" : 1,
    "skipped" : 0,
    "failed" : 0
  },
  "hits" : {
    "total" : {
      "value" : 1,
      "relation" : "eq"
    },
    "max_score" : 1.0,
    "hits" : [
      {
        "_index" : "department",
        "_type" : "department",
        "_id" : "ycTc2GoBlyaBuhcfU42x",
        "_score" : 1.0,
        "_source" : {
          "name" : "IT",
          "employees" : 50
        }
      }
    ]
}
```

| }]

X-Pack security APIs

In the previous section, we learned how to manage users and roles using the Kibana UI. However, often, we would like to carry out these operations programmatically from our applications. This is where the X-Pack security APIs come in handy. X-Pack security APIs are REST APIs that can be used for user/role management, role mapping to users, performing authentication, and checking whether the authenticated user has specified a list of privileges. These APIs perform operations on the `native` realm. The Kibana UI internally makes use of these APIs for user/role management. In order to execute these APIs, the user should have `superuser` or the latest `manage_security` privileges. Let's explore some of these APIs in this section. ...

User Management APIs

This provides a set of APIs to create, update, or delete users from the `native` realm.

The following is a list of available APIs and how to use them:

<code>GET /_xpack/security/user</code>	-- To list all the users
<code>GET /_xpack/security/user/<username></code>	-- To get the details of a specific user
<code>DELETE /_xpack/security/user/<username></code>	-- To Delete a user
<code>POST /_xpack/security/user/<username></code>	-- To Create a new user
<code>PUT /_xpack/security/user/<username></code>	-- To Update an existing user
<code>PUT /_xpack/security/user/<username>/_disable</code>	-- To disable an existing user
<code>PUT /_xpack/security/user/<username>/_enable</code>	-- To enable an existing disabled user
<code>PUT /_xpack/security/user/<username>/_password</code>	-- to Change the password

The `username` in the path parameter specifies the user against which the operation is carried out. The body of the request accepts parameters such as `email`, `full_name`, and `password` as strings and `roles` as list.

Example 1: Create a new user, `user3`, with `monitor_role` assigned to it:

```
curl -u elastic:elastic -X POST http://localhost:9200/_xpack/security/user/user3 -H  
'content-type: application/json' -d '  
{  
  "password" : "randompassword",  
  "roles" : [ "monitor_role"],  
  "full_name" : "user3",  
  "email" : "user3@packt.com"  
}'  
  
Response:  
user": {"created": true}}
```

Example 2: Get the list of all users:

```
curl -u elastic:elastic -XGET http://localhost:9200/_xpack/security/user?pretty
```

Example 3: Delete `user3`:

```
curl -u elastic:elastic -XDELETE http://localhost:9200/_xpack/security/user/user3  
Response:  
{"found": true}
```

Example 4: Change the password:

```
curl -u elastic:elastic -XPUT http://localhost:9200/_xpack/security/user/user2/_password  
-H "content-type: application/json" -d "{ \"password\": \"newpassword\"}"
```

When using curl commands on Windows machines, note that they don't work if they have single quotes (') in them. The preceding example showed the use of a curl command on a

Windows machine. Also, make sure you escape double quotes within the body of the command, as shown in the preceding example.

Role Management APIs

This provides a set of APIs to create, update, remove, and retrieve roles from the `native` realm.

The list of available APIs under this section, as well as information on what they do, is as follows:

```
GET /_xpack/security/role                                -- To retrieve the list of all
roles GET /_xpack/security/role/<rolename>              -- To retrieve details
of a specific rolePOST /_xpack/security/role/<rolename>/_clear_cache    -- To
evict/clear roles from the native role cachePOST /_xpack/security/role/<rolename>
-- To create a rolePUT /_xpack/security/role/<rolename>          -- To
update an existing role
```

The `rolename` in the path parameter specifies the role against which the operation is carried out. The body of the request accepts parameters such as `cluster`, which ...

Monitoring Elasticsearch

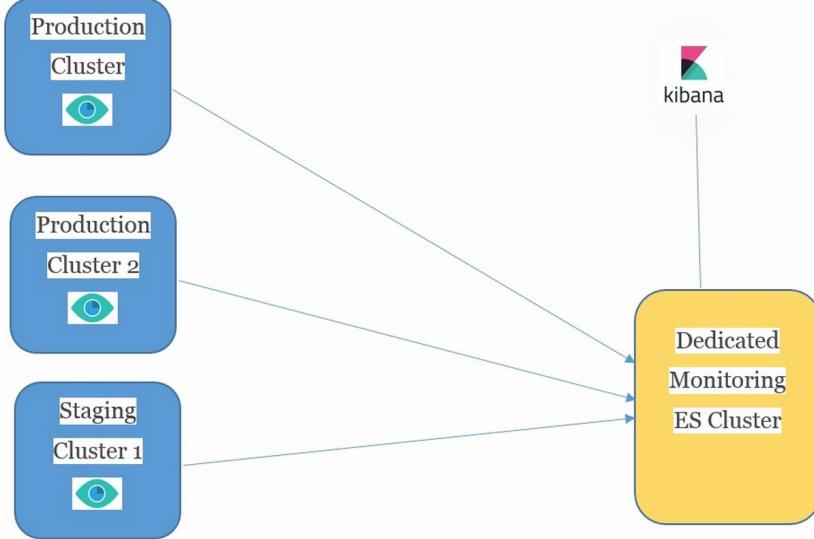
Elasticsearch exposes a rich set of APIs, known as **stats** APIs, to monitor Elasticsearch at the cluster, node, and indices levels. Some of these APIs are `_cluster/stats`, `_nodes/stats`, and `myindex/stats`. These APIs provide state/monitoring information in real time, and the statistics that are presented in these APIs are point-in-time and in `.json` format. As an administrator/developer, when working with Elasticsearch, you will be interested in both real-time statistics as well as historical statistics, which would help you in understanding/analyzing the behavior (health or performance) of a cluster better.

Also, reading through a set of numbers for a period of time (say, for example, to find out the JVM utilization over time) would be very difficult. Rather, a UI that pictorially represents these numbers as graphs would be very useful for visualizing and analyzing the current and past trends/behaviors (health or performance) of the Elasticsearch cluster. This is where the monitoring feature of X-Pack comes in handy.

The X-Pack monitoring components allow you to easily monitor the Elastic Stack (Elasticsearch, Kibana, and Logstash) from Kibana. X-Pack consists of a monitoring agent that runs on each of the instances (Elasticsearch, Kibana, and Logstash) and periodically collects and indexes the health and performance metrics. These can then be easily visualized using the Monitoring UI component of Kibana. The Monitoring UI of Kibana comes with predefined dashboards that let you easily visualize and analyze real-time and past performance data.

By default, the metrics collected by X-Pack are indexed within the cluster you are monitoring. However, in production, it is strongly recommended to have a separate, dedicated cluster to store these metrics. A dedicated cluster for monitoring has the following benefits:

- Allows you to monitor multiple clusters from a central location
- Reduces the load and storage on your production clusters since the metrics are stored in a dedicated monitoring cluster
- There is access to **Monitoring**, even when some clusters are unhealthy or down
- Separate security levels from **Monitoring** and **Production Cluster** can be enforced:



As we mentioned previously, the metrics collected by X-Pack are indexed within the cluster you are monitoring. If a dedicated monitoring cluster is set up, then we need to configure where to send/ship the metrics to in the monitored instances. This can be configured in the `elasticsearch.yml` file of each node, as shown in the following code:

```

xpak.monitoring.exporters:
  id1:
    type: http
    host: ["http://dedicated_monitoring_cluster:port"]

```

It's optional to have X-Pack installed on a dedicated monitoring cluster; however, it is recommended to have it installed there too. If X-Pack is installed on a dedicated monitoring cluster, then make sure you provide the user credentials (`auth.username` and `auth.password`) as well while configuring the monitored instances. Monitored metrics are stored in a system-level index that has the `.monitoring-` index pattern.

Monitoring UI

To access the Monitoring UI, log in to Kibana and click on Stack Monitoring from the side navigation. If the monitoring data collection is not enabled, you will be taken to the following screen, where you can enable monitoring by clicking on the Turn on monitoring button. By default, monitoring would be enabled but data collection would be disabled. These settings can be dynamic and can be updated using the **cluster update settings API**, which doesn't require a restart to occur. If the same settings were set in `elasticsearch.yml` OR `kibana.yml`, a restart would be required:

The screenshot shows the Kibana interface with the URL `localhost:5601/app/monitoring#no-data?_g=0`. On the left, there's a vertical sidebar with various icons. One icon, a red-bordered heart with a downward arrow, is highlighted. The main content area is titled "Stack Monitoring" and "Clusters". It displays a message: "Monitoring is currently off" with a green heart icon above it. Below the message, it says "Monitoring provides insight to your hardware performance and load." and "We checked the cluster defaults settings and found that `xpack.monitoring.collection.enabled` is set to `false`." At the bottom, there's a blue button labeled "Turn on monitoring" with a red border around it.

Once you click on Turn on monitoring, the cluster settings ...

Elasticsearch metrics

You can monitor the Elasticsearch performance data at a cluster level, node level, or index level. The Elasticsearch Monitoring UI provides three tabs, each displaying the metrics at the cluster, node, and index levels. The three tabs are Overview, Nodes, and Indices, respectively. To navigate to the Elasticsearch Monitoring UI, click on one of the links (Overview, Nodes, and Indices) under the Elasticsearch section.

Overview tab

Cluster-level metrics provide aggregated information across all the nodes and is the first place one should look when monitoring an Elasticsearch cluster. Cluster-level metrics are displayed in the Overview tab and can be navigated to by clicking on the Overview link under the Elasticsearch section found in the landing page of the Monitoring UI.

The Overview tab provides key metrics that indicate the overall health of an Elasticsearch cluster:



The key metrics that are displayed are cluster status, number of nodes and number of indices present, memory used, total number of shards present, total number of unassigned shards, total ...

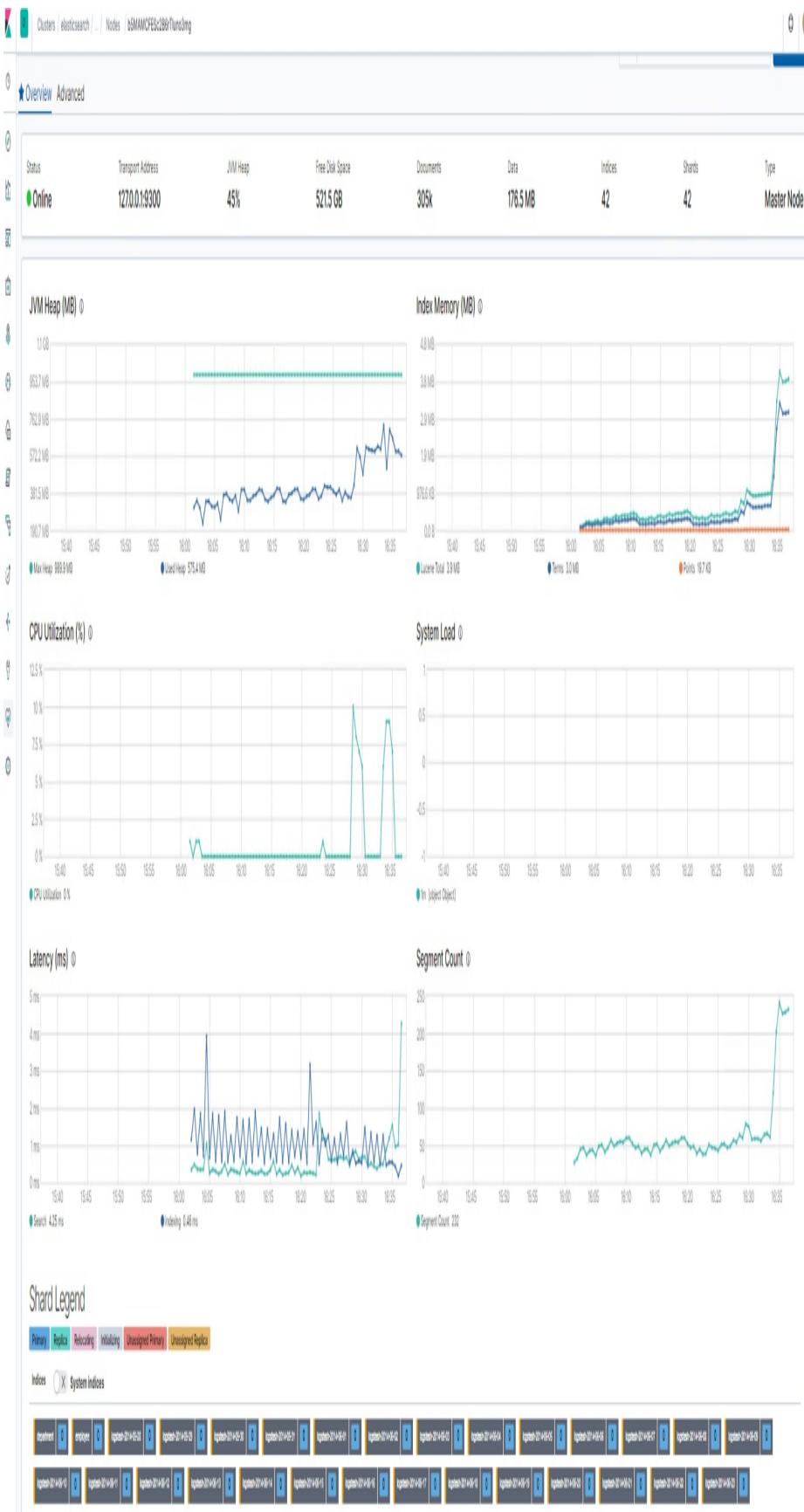
Nodes tab

Clicking on the Nodes tab displays the summary details of each node present in the cluster, as shown in the following screenshot:

The screenshot shows the Elasticsearch interface with the 'Clusters' section selected. Under 'elasticsearch', the 'Elasticsearch' tab is active. The 'Nodes' tab is selected, indicated by an underline. At the top right, there are buttons for 'Last 1 hour' (selected), 'Show dates', and 'Refresh'. Below the tabs, there's a summary table with columns: Status, Nodes, Indices, Memory, Total Shards, Unassigned Shards, Documents, and Data. The status is 'Yellow', there is 1 node, 42 indices, 474.6 MB / 989.9 MB memory, 75 total shards, 33 unassigned shards, 304,564 documents, and 176.2 MB data. Below this is a search bar labeled 'Filter nodes...'. A table lists individual nodes with columns: Name, Status, CPU Usage, Load Average, JVM Memory, Disk Free Space, and Shards. One node is listed: '★ MAOSH01-APM01' (127.0.0.1:9300) is online, with 7% CPU usage (10% max, 0% min), N/A load average, 67% JVM memory (73% max, 22% min), 521.5 GB disk free space (521.1 GB max, 521.5 GB min), and 42 assigned shards.

For each node, information is provided, such as the Name of the node, Status of the node, CPU Usage (average, min, and max usage), Load Average (average, min, and max usage), JVM Memory (average, min, and max usage), Disk Free Space (average, min, and max usage), and total number of assigned Shards. It also provides information such as whether a node is a Master node or not (indicated by a star next to the node name) and details about the transport host and port.

Clicking on the Node name provides detailed information about the node. This detailed information is displayed in two tabs, namely Overview and Advanced. The node Overview tab looks like this:



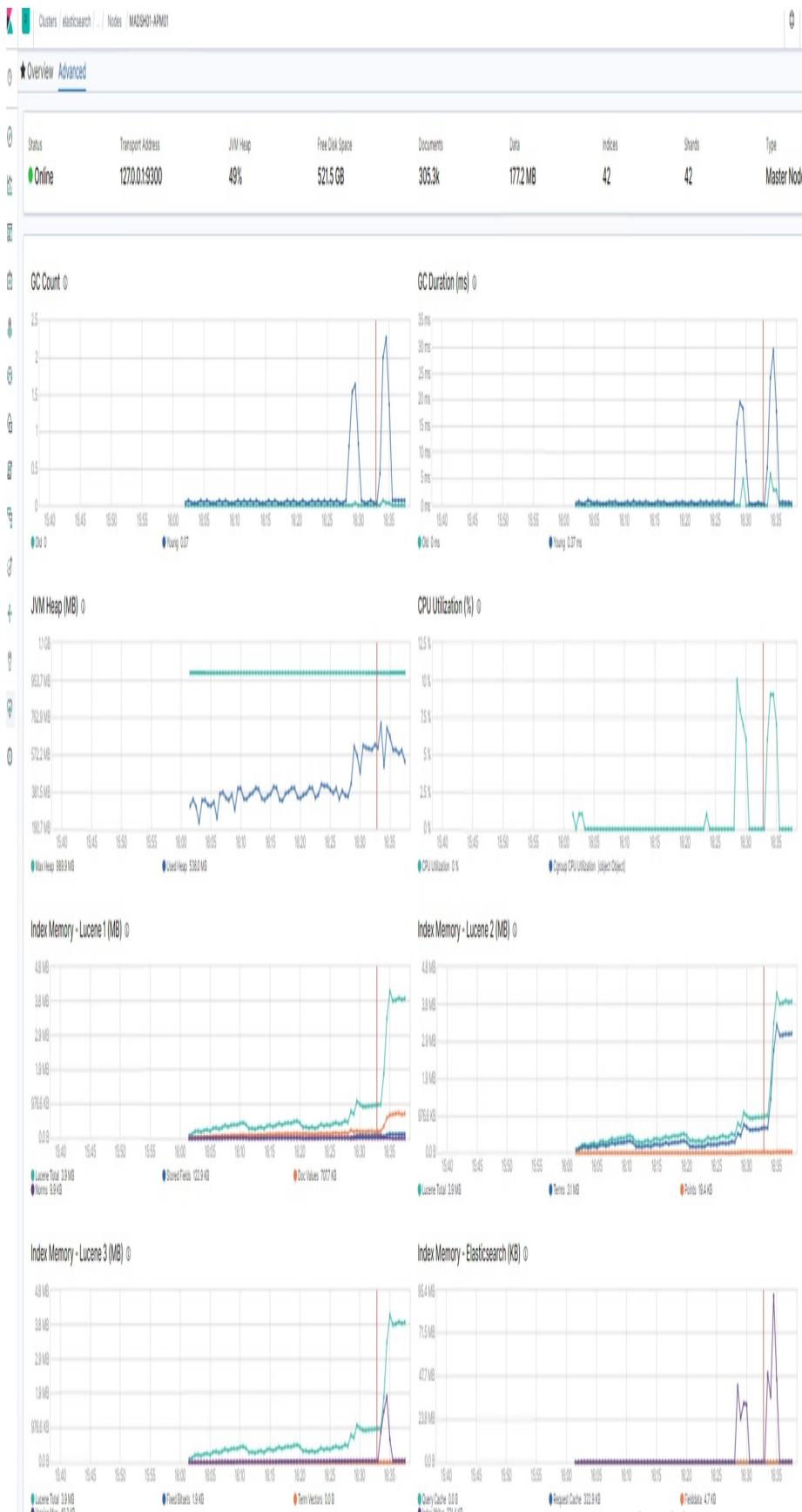
The node Overview tab provides information in the top pane, such as the status of the node, transport IP address of the node, JVM Heap Utilization in percent, free disk space available, total number of documents present on the node (this number includes documents present in both replica and primary shards), total disk space used, total number of indices in the node, total number of shards, and type of node (master, data, ingest, or coordinating node).

The node Overview tab also provides visualizations for JVM Heap usage, Index Memory, CPU Utilization in percent, System Load average, Latency (ms), and Segment Count. The statuses of shards of various indices are provided under the Shard Legend section.

If the Show system indices checkbox is checked, then the shard status of all the indexes created by X-Pack can be seen.

The node Advanced tab provides visualizations of other metrics, such as **garbage collection (GC)** count and duration, detailed Index Memory usage at Lucene and Elasticsearch levels, Indexing Time (in ms), Request rate, Indexing, Read Threads, and Cgroup stats.

The following is a screenshot of the Node Advanced tab:



The Indices tab

Clicking on the Indices tab displays the summary details of each index present in the cluster, as shown in the following screenshot:

Clusters | elasticsearch | Elasticsearch

Last hour Show dates Refresh

Overview Nodes Indices Jobs Cores

Status	Nodes	Indices	Memory	Total Shards	Unassigned Shards	Documents	Data
Yellow	1	42	4716 MB / 989.9 MB	75	33	305,452	1770 MB

System indices

Filter indices...

Name	Status	Document Count	Data	Index Rate	Search Rate	Unassigned Shards
department	Yellow	3	4.0 kB	0/s	0/s	1
employee	Yellow	3	7.5 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-05-28	Yellow	1k	1.1 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-05-29	Yellow	7.3k	5.1 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-05-30	Yellow	9.1k	5.0 kB	0.72/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-05-31	Yellow	9.4k	5.9 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-01	Yellow	10.4k	6.1 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-02	Yellow	11k	6.3 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-03	Yellow	7.9k	4.4 kB	0.08/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-04	Yellow	6.2k	4.1 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-05	Yellow	6.5k	5.2 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-06	Yellow	11.2k	6.6 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-07	Yellow	10.7k	6.0 kB	1.17/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-08	Yellow	13.1k	6.9 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-09	Yellow	10.7k	5.9 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-10	Yellow	10.8k	6.6 kB	0.08/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-11	Yellow	8.1k	4.4 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-12	Yellow	10.1k	5.9 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-13	Yellow	10.9k	6.4 kB	0/s	0/s	1
logstash-2014-06-14	Yellow	10.4k	5.9 kB	0.02/s	0/s	1

Items per page: 20 (11)

If the Show system indices checkbox is checked, then the shard status of all indexes created by X-Pack can be seen.

For each index, it provides information, such as the name of the index, status of the index, total count of documents present, disk space used, index rate per second, search rate per second, and number of unassigned shards.

Clicking on an Index name provides detailed information about that index. The detailed information is displayed in two tabs, namely Overview and Advanced. The ...

Alerting

The Kibana UI provides beautiful visualizations that help with analyzing and detecting anomalies in data in real time. However, as an administrator or an analyst, it wouldn't be possible to sit in front of dashboards for hours to detect anomalies and take action. It would be nice if the administrator gets notified when, for example, the following events occur:

- There is an outage in one of the servers being monitored
- An Elasticsearch Cluster turns red/yellow due to some nodes leaving the cluster
- Disk space/CPU utilization crosses a specific threshold
- There is an intrusion in the network
- There are errors reported in the logs

This is where the X-Pack Alerting component comes to the rescue. The X-Pack Alerting component, named `watcher`, provides the ability to automatically watch for changes/anomalies in data stored on Elasticsearch and take the required action. X-Pack Alerting is enabled by default as part of the X-Pack default installation.

`watcher` provides a set of REST APIs for creating, managing, and testing watches. Kibana also provides a **Watcher** UI for creating, managing, and testing. The Watcher UI internally makes use of Watcher REST APIs for the management of watches.

Anatomy of a watch

A **Watch** is made of the following components:

- `schedule`: This is used to specify the time interval for scheduling/triggering the watch.
- `query`: This is used to specify a query to retrieve data from Elasticsearch and run it as an input to the condition. Elasticsearch Query DSL/Lucene queries can be used to specify the queries.
- `condition`: This is used to specify conditions against the input data obtained from the query and check whether any action needs to be taken or not.
- `action`: This is used to specify actions such as sending an email, sending a slack notification, logging the event to a specific log, and much more on meeting the condition:

Let's look into a sample watch and understand the building blocks of a watch in ...

Alerting in action

Now that we know what a **Watch** is made up of, in this section, we will explore how to create, delete, and manage watches.

You can create/delete/manage watches using the following software:

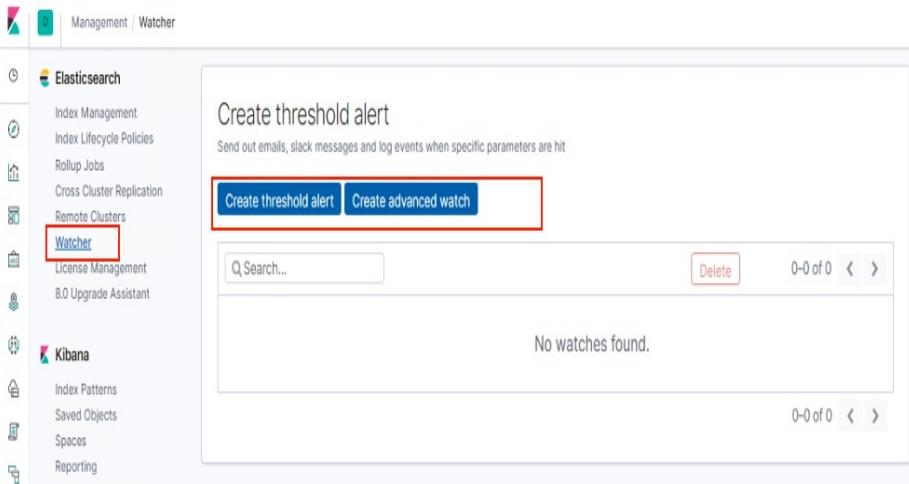
- Kibana Watcher UI
- X-Pack Watcher REST APIs

The **Watcher** UI internally makes use of Watcher REST APIs for the management of watches. In this section, we will explore the creation, deletion, and management of watches using the Kibana Watcher UI.

Creating a new alert

To create a watch, log in to Kibana (<http://localhost:5601>) as elastic/elastic and navigate to the Management UI; click on Watcher in the Elasticsearch section. Two options are available for creating alerts:

- Create threshold alert
- Create advanced watch:



The screenshot shows the Elasticsearch Management UI with the 'Management / Watcher' tab selected. On the left, there's a sidebar with various sections: Elasticsearch (Index Management, Index Lifecycle Policies, Rollup Jobs, Cross Cluster Replication, Remote Clusters, **Watcher**, License Management, 8.0 Upgrade Assistant), Kibana (Index Patterns, Saved Objects, Spaces, Reporting), and a '...' button. The 'Watcher' section is highlighted with a red box. The main area is titled 'Create threshold alert' with the sub-instruction 'Send out emails, slack messages and log events when specific parameters are hit'. It features two buttons: 'Create threshold alert' (highlighted with a red box) and 'Create advanced watch'. Below these buttons is a search bar, a delete button, and a count '0-0 of 0'. A message 'No watches found.' is displayed. At the bottom, another '0-0 of 0' count is shown.

By using the Threshold alert option, you can create a threshold-based alert to get notified when a metric goes above or below a given threshold. Using this UI, users can easily create threshold-based alerts without worrying about directly working with raw JSON requests. This UI provides options for creating alerts on time-based indices only (that is, the index has a timestamp).

...

Threshold Alert

Click on Create New Watch and choose the Threshold Alert option. This brings up the Threshold Alert UI.

Specify the name of the alert; choose the index to be used to query against, the time field, and the trigger frequency in the Threshold Alert UI:

Create a new threshold alert

Send an alert when a specific condition is met. This will run every 1 minute.

Name

Indices to query

 Time field @timestamp Run watch every 1 minutes

Use * to broaden your search query

Then, specify the condition that will cause the alert to trigger. As the expressions/conditions are changed or modified, the visualization is updated automatically to show the threshold value and data as red and blue lines, respectively:

Matching the following condition

WHEN count() OVER all documents IS ABOVE 100000 FOR THE LAST 5 minutes



Finally, specify the action that needs to be triggered when the action is met by clicking on the Add new action button. It provides three types of actions, that is, email, slack, and logging actions. One or more actions can be configured:

Will perform 1 action once met

Add new action

Logging

Log text

Number of logs : {{{ctx.metadata.name}}} has exceeded the threshold

Remove Logging Action

Log a sample message now

Then, click on the Save button to create the watch.

Clicking on Save will save the watch in the `watches` index and can be validated using the following query:

```
curl -u elastic:elastic -XGET http://localhost:9200/.watches/_search?  
q=metadata.name:logs_watch
```

Advanced Watch

Click on the Create New Watch button and choose the Advanced Watch option. This brings up the Advanced Watch UI.

Specify the watch ID and watch name, and then paste the JSON to create a watch in the Watch JSON box; click on Save to create a watch. Watch ID refers to the identifier used by Elasticsearch when creating a Watch, whereas name is the more user-friendly way to identify the watch:

New watch

Save Cancel

Edit Simulate

ID	errored_logs_watch
Name	errored_logs_watch

Watch JSON (Syntax)

```
8* "search": {  
9*   "request": {  
10*     "body": {  
11*       "size": 0,  
12*       "query": {  
13*         "match": {"message": "error"}  
14*       }  
15*     },  
16*     "indices": [  
17*       "logs"  
18*     ]  
19*   }  
20* },  
21* },  
22* "condition": {  
23*   "compare": {  
24*     "ctx.payload.hits.total": {  
25*       "gte": 10  
26*     }  
27*   }  
28* },  
29* "actions": {  
30*   "my-logging-action": {  
31*     "logging": {  
32*       "text": "There are {{ctx.payload.hits.total}} documents in your index. Threshold is 10."  
33*     }  
34*   }  
35* }  
36 }
```

The Simulate tab provides a UI to override parts of the watch and then run a simulation of it.

Watch Name will be stored in the metadata section of the watch body. You can use the metadata section when creating the watch to store custom metadata, ...

Deleting/deactivating/editing a watch

To delete a watch, navigate to the Management UI and click on Watcher in the Elasticsearch section. From the Watches list, select one or more watches that need to be deleted and click on the Delete button:

Create threshold alert
Send out emails, slack messages and log events when specific parameters are hit

[Create threshold alert](#) [Create advanced watch](#)

ID	Name	State	Comment	Last Fired	Last Triggered	Action
252f1c48-98f...	logs_watch	✓ OK				Edit
988aff02-dc8...	logs_error_watch	✓ OK		21 minutes ago	a few seconds...	Edit
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> errored_logs_...	errored_logs_watch	✓ OK				Edit
I2RVLSk2Rr6l...	X-Pack Monitoring: Cluster Status...	Firing		a minute ago	a minute ago	
I2RVLSk2Rr6l...	X-Pack Monitoring: Nodes Chang...	✓ OK			a minute ago	
I2RVLSk2Rr6l...	X-Pack Monitoring: Elasticsearch ...	✓ OK			a minute ago	
I2RVLSk2Rr6l...	X-Pack Monitoring: Kibana Versio...	✓ OK			a minute ago	
I2RVLSk2Rr6l...	X-Pack Monitoring: Logstash Vers...	✓ OK			a minute ago	
I2RVLSk2Rr6l...	X-Pack Monitoring: License Expira...	✓ OK			a minute ago	
<input type="checkbox"/> logstash_error...		Firing		a few seconds...	a few seconds...	Edit

1 watch selected

To edit a watch, click on the Edit link, modify the watch details, and click on the Save button to save your changes. To deactivate a watch (that is, to temporarily disable watch execution), navigate to the Management UI and click on Watcher in the Elasticsearch section. From the Watches list, click on the custom watch. The Watch History will be displayed. Click on the Deactivate button. You can also delete a watch from this screen.

Clicking on an execution time (link) in the Watch History displays the details of a particular `watch_record`:

Current Status

Action ↑	State
logging_1	✓ OK

[Deactivate](#) [Delete](#)

Watch History

Last 1 hour ▾	Trigger Time ↓	State	Comment
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:19:54.740	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:19:24.729	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:18:54.713	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:18:24.704	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:17:54.694	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:17:24.678	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:16:54.670	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:16:24.659	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:15:54.651	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:15:24.638	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:14:54.630	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:14:24.619	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:13:54.611	✓ OK	
	May 23, 2019 @ 17:13:24.602	✓ OK	

1-20 of 66 < >

Starting from Elastic Stack 6.8.0 and 7.1.0, basic security features are free with the Elastic Basic License. More details can be found at <https://www.elastic.co/blog/security-for-elasticsearch-is-now-free>.

Summary

In this chapter, we explored how to install and configure the X-Pack components in Elastic Stack and how to secure the Elastic cluster by creating users and roles. We also learned how to monitor the Elasticsearch server and alerting in order to generate notifications when there are changes or anomalies in the data.

In the next chapter, we'll put together a complete application using Elastic Stack for sensor data analytics with the concepts we've learned about so far.

Section 4: Production and Server Infrastructure

This section shows you how Elastic Stack components can be used to model your data in Elasticsearch and how to build data pipelines to ingest data and visualize it using Kibana. It also shows you how to deploy Elastic Stack to production. You will see how Elasticsearch simplifies situations in terms of searching products, log analytics, and sensor data analytics. We are also going to work on Elastic Cloud to deploy Elastic Stack. Finally, we will look at how Elastic Stack can be used to set up a real-time monitoring solution for your servers and the applications that we have built using Elastic Stack.

This section includes the following chapters:

- [Chapter 9, Running Elastic Stack in Production](#)
- [Chapter 10, Building a Sensor Data Analytics Application](#)
- [Chapter 11, Monitoring Server Infrastructure](#)

Running Elastic Stack in Production

In our quest to learn Elastic Stack, we have covered good ground and have a solid footing in all of its components. We have a solid foundation of the core Elasticsearch with its search and analytics capabilities, and we have covered how to effectively use Logstash and Kibana to build a powerful platform that can deliver analytics on big data. We have also seen how X-Pack makes it easy to secure and monitor big data, generate alerts, and perform graph analysis and machine learning.

Taking the Elastic Stack components to production requires that you are aware of some common pitfalls, patterns, and strategies that can help you run your solution smoothly in production. In this chapter, we will see some common ...

Hosting Elastic Stack on a managed cloud

Cloud providers make the process of setting up a production-ready cluster much easier. As a user, we don't have to do low-level configuration or the selection and management of hardware, an operating system, and many of the Elasticsearch and Kibana configuration parameters.

There are multiple cloud providers that provide managed clusters for Elastic Stack, such as Elastic Cloud, QBox.io, Bonsai, and many more. In this section, we will go through how to get started with **Elastic Cloud**. Elastic Cloud is the official cloud offering by the company Elastic.co, which is the main company contributing to the development of Elasticsearch and other Elastic Stack components. We will cover the following topics while working with Elastic Cloud:

- Getting up and running on Elastic Cloud
- Using Kibana
- Overriding configuration
- Recovering from a snapshot

Getting up and running on Elastic Cloud

Sign up for Elastic Cloud using <https://www.elastic.co/cloud/as-a-service/signup>, provide your email address, and verify your email. You will be asked to set your initial password.

After your initial password is set, you can log in to the Elastic Cloud console at <https://cloud.elastic.co>. The Elastic Cloud console offers an easy-to-use user interface to manage your clusters. Since you just signed up for a trial account, you can create a free cluster during the trial period.

We can choose a name for your trial cluster. You will also be able to choose **AWS (Amazon Web Services)** or **GCE (Google Compute Engine)** while launching the cluster. Upon logging in, you can create a cluster from the following screen: ...

Recovering from a snapshot

Elastic Cloud automatically creates a snapshot of all indexes in your cluster periodically (every 30 minutes) and keeps them for recovery purposes, if required. This happens automatically without doing any additional setup or code. You can visit the **Snapshots** link under your **Deployments > Elasticsearch** to view the available list of **Snapshots**, as follows:

The screenshot shows the Elastic Cloud interface for a deployment named "test-cluster / Elasticsearch". The left sidebar has a "Snapshots" section selected. The main area displays a summary of snapshot settings: "Last successful snapshot: 19 minutes ago", "Next snapshot: In 11 minutes", and "Snapshot frequency: 30 minutes". It also notes that "The current settings retain 100 snapshots over a period of 2 days." Below this are two buttons: "Take snapshot now" and "Restore from another deployment". A note says "Choose an snapshot in another deployment to restore on this deployment". The main content area is titled "Solutions" and lists "All snapshots 29 Success 29". A table lists 29 snapshots, each with a status of "Success", a timestamp, a duration, and a "Restore" button. The snapshots are grouped by instance ID, with some having multiple entries. At the bottom right of the table, there are navigation arrows for page 1 of 3.

Snapshot	Status	Completed	Duration	Action
scheduled-1558940570-instance-0000000001	Success	19 minutes ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558938786-instance-0000000001	Success	An hour ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558938986-instance-0000000001	Success	An hour ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558935163-instance-0000000001	Success	2 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558933361-instance-0000000001	Success	2 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558931559-instance-0000000001	Success	3 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558929757-instance-0000000001	Success	3 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558927955-instance-0000000001	Success	4 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558926153-instance-0000000001	Success	4 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore
scheduled-1558924351-instance-0000000001	Success	5 hours ago	A few seconds	Restore

Fig-9.4: Listing of snapshots on Elastic Cloud

You can choose the snapshot that you want to restore from, and you will be presented with the following screen:

The screenshot shows the Elasticsearch interface for managing snapshots. On the left, a sidebar lists various deployment and cluster management options like 'Deployments', 'Logs', 'Snapshots', and 'Activity'. The main area displays a 'test-cluster' snapshot named 'scheduled-1558940570-instance-0000000001'. It includes a summary table with metrics such as total shards (4), successful shards (4), and failed shards (0). Below this, the 'Indices' section lists several indices: '.kibana_1', '.kibana_task_manager', '.security-7', and 'apm-7.1.0-onboarding-2019.05.26'. A 'Restore Snapshot' section allows specifying indices to restore ('Specify Indices' field) and renaming them ('Rename Indices' field). A red button at the bottom labeled 'Restore snapshot' is prominent.

Fig-9.5: Snapshot details and restoring from a specific snapshot

The snapshot contains the saved state for all indexes in the cluster. It is possible to choose a subset of the indexes for restoring and also to rename it while restoring it. It is also possible to restore the snapshot on a separate cluster.

Next, we will see how to get started with Elastic Stack if you are planning to manage the Elastic Stack components yourself. This is also called **self-hosting**, in that you will be hosting and managing it on your own.

Using Kibana

The link to the Kibana instance is already made available to us on the cluster overview page on Elastic Cloud. You can click on it to launch the Kibana UI. Unlike the local instance of Kibana that we initially created, this instance is secured by X-Pack security. You will have to log in using the credentials provided to you after you created the Elastic Cloud cluster in the previous section.

After logging in, you should see the **Kibana** UI, as follows:

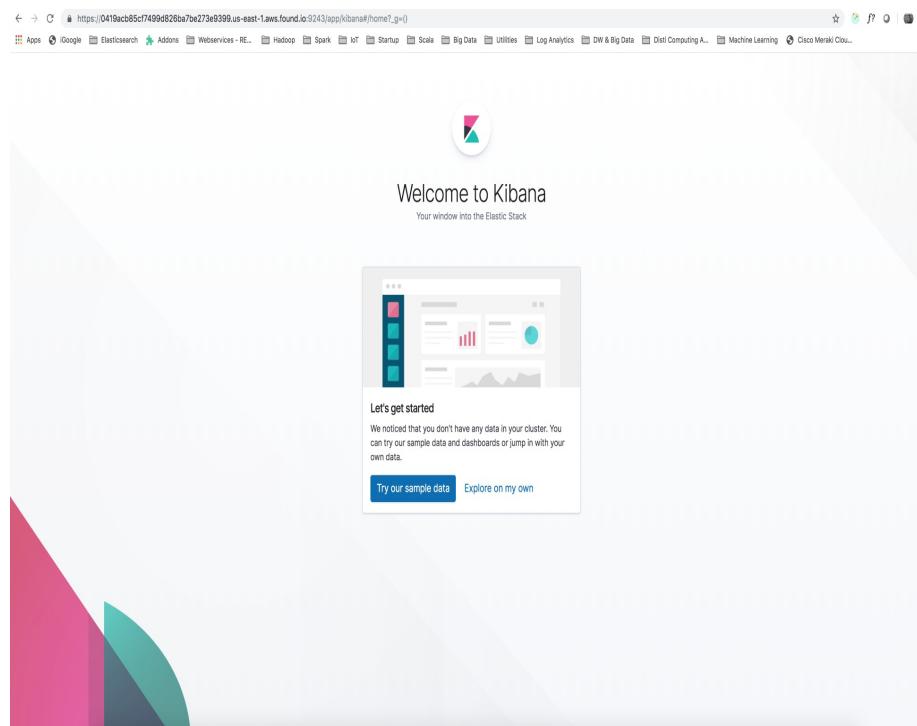


Fig-9.3 Kibana UI on Elastic Cloud after logging in

You can view all indexes, analyze data on your Elasticsearch cluster, and monitor your Elasticsearch cluster from this Kibana UI. ...

Overriding configuration

It is possible to override the configuration of your Elasticsearch nodes via the Edit menu in the navigation panel on the left side under the **Deployments**. Elastic Cloud doesn't allow you to edit the `elasticsearch.yml` file directly. However, it provides a section called **User Settings**, which allows you to override a subset of the configuration parameters.

The configuration parameters that can be overridden are documented in the Elastic Cloud reference documentation at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/cloud/current/ec-add-user-settings.html>.

Hosting Elastic Stack on your own

Hosting Elastic Stack on your own, that is, self-hosting Elastic Stack, requires you to install, configure, and manage Elasticsearch and your other Elastic Stack products. This can be done in one of two ways:

- Self-hosting on-premise
- Self-hosting on a cloud

Regardless of whether you run Elastic Stack on-premise (in your own data center) or run it on one of the cloud providers, such as AWS, Azure, or GCE, there are some common aspects that you should take into consideration. While self-hosting, you will be faced with the following choices:

- Selecting hardware
- Selecting the operating system
- Configuring Elasticsearch nodes
- Managing and monitoring Elasticsearch nodes
- Special considerations while self-hosting ...

Selecting hardware

Elasticsearch primarily has memory-bound tasks which rely on the inverted index. The more data that it can fit in the RAM, the faster the performance will be. But this statement cannot always be generalized. It depends on the nature of your data and the type of operations or workload that you are going to have.

Using Elasticsearch doesn't mean that it has to perform all operations in-memory. Elasticsearch also uses on-disk data very efficiently, especially for aggregation operations.

All datatypes (except analyzed strings) support a special data structure called `doc_values`, which organizes the data on the disk in a columnar fashion. `doc_values` is useful for sorting and aggregation operations. Since `doc_values` is enabled by default for all datatypes except analyzed strings, it makes sorts and aggregations run mostly off the disk. Those fields do not need to be loaded in memory to aggregate or sort by them.

As Elasticsearch can scale horizontally, this is a relatively easy decision to make. It is fine to start with nodes of around 16 or 32 GB RAM, with around 8 CPU cores. As we will see in the coming sections, you cannot have Elasticsearch JVM with more than 32 GB of heap; effectively, there is no point in having a machine with more than 64 GB RAM. SSD hard disks are recommended if you are planning to do heavy aggregations.

It is important to benchmark with the initial hardware and then add more nodes or upgrade your nodes.

Selecting an operating system

Linux is the preferred choice when deploying Elasticsearch and the Elastic Stack components. Your choice of operating system will mostly depend on the preferred technologies of your organization. Elastic Stack can also be deployed on Windows if your organization prefers the Microsoft stack.

Configuring Elasticsearch nodes

Elasticsearch, which is the heart of Elastic Stack, needs some configuration before starting it in production. Most of the configuration should work out of the box, but will require the following things to be reviewed at the OS level or JVM level.

JVM heap size

Set -Xms and -Xmx to be the same. More heap means Elasticsearch can keep more data in memory for faster access. But more heap also means that when the Java heap is close to full, the JVM's garbage collector will run a full garbage collection. At that point, all other processing within the Elasticsearch node experiences a pause. So, the larger the heap, the longer the pauses will be. The maximum heap size that you can configure is around 32 GB. Another recommendation to keep in mind is that we should allocate no more than 50% of the total available RAM on the machine to the Elasticsearch JVM. The reason is that the system needs enough memory for the filesystem cache for Apache Lucene. Ultimately, all the data stored on the Elasticsearch ...

Disable swapping

When swapping is enabled, an OS generally has a tendency to reclaim the memory from an application by swapping the data to disk to make more memory available for other programs.

On the Elasticsearch node, this can result in the OS swapping out the heap memory of Elasticsearch. This process of swapping out from memory to disk and then swapping back from disk to memory can slow down the process. This is why swapping should be disabled on the node that is running Elasticsearch.

File descriptors

On Linux and macOS operating systems, there is a limit to the number of open file handles or file descriptors that a process can keep. This often needs to be increased in the case of Elasticsearch, as the default value is generally quite low for the open file descriptor limit.

Installing EC2 discovery plugin

Elasticsearch nodes discover their peers via multicast when they are in the same network. This works very well in a regular LAN. When it comes to EC2, the network is shared and the node to node communication and automatic discovery don't work. It requires the installation of the EC2 discovery plugin on all nodes to be able to discover new nodes.

To install the EC2 discovery plugin, follow the instructions at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/plugins/current/discovery-ec2.html> and install it on all nodes.

Thread pools and garbage collector

Elasticsearch does many types of operations, such as indexing, searching, sorting, and aggregations, and uses JVM thread pools to accomplish its tasks. It is advisable to not tune the settings related to thread pools in Elasticsearch. They generally do more harm than help to improve performance. Another thing not to tune in Elasticsearch is the garbage collector settings.

Managing and monitoring Elasticsearch

When you self-host Elasticsearch, the entire monitoring and management activities for the cluster are on you. It is necessary to monitor your Elasticsearch node process status, memory, and disk space on the node. If a node crashes for any reason, or becomes unavailable, it needs to be started back again.

The snapshots of the Elasticsearch indexes need to be taken regularly for taking backups. We will discuss the snapshot/restore functionalities for backing up. Most of the monitoring can be achieved via X-Pack and Kibana, but management processes need to be set up manually.

Running in Docker containers

Docker is a popular way of containerizing and shipping software. The advantage of Docker is that the software that is dockerized and runs inside a light-weight container that has a small overhead compared to a virtual machine. As a result of its reduced overhead and large pool of publicly available Docker images, Docker is a great way to run software in production in a predictable way without the need of much configuration.

Official Elasticsearch Docker images are available for download in different flavors:

- Elasticsearch with basic X-Pack license
- Elasticsearch with full X-Pack license and 30-day evaluation
- Open source version of Elasticsearch without X-Pack

Getting started with an Elasticsearch instance running ...

Special considerations while deploying to a cloud

While self-hosting on a cloud, you may choose one of the cloud providers, such as AWS, Microsoft Azure, or GCE. They provide compute resources, networking capabilities, virtual private clouds, and much more, to get control over your servers. Using a cloud provider as opposed to running on your own hardware comes with the following advantages:

- No upfront investment in hardware
- Ability to upgrade/downgrade servers
- Ability to add or remove servers as and when needed

It is typical to not be sure how much CPU, RAM, and so on, is required for your nodes when you start. Choosing the cloud gives the flexibility to benchmark on one type of configuration and then upgrade/downgrade or add/remove nodes as needed without incurring upfront costs. We will take EC2 as an example and try to understand the considerations to take into account. Most of the considerations should remain similar for other cloud providers as well. The following are some of the aspects to consider on AWS EC2:

- Choosing instance type
- Changing the ports; do not expose ports!
- Proxy requests
- Binding HTTP to local addresses
- Installing EC2 discovery plugin
- Installing S3 repository plugin
- Setting up periodic snapshots

Let's focus on them one by one.

Choosing instance type

EC2 offers different types of instances to meet different requirements. A typical starting point for Elasticsearch is to consider the `m5d.large` OR `m5d.2xlarge` instance; they have has 4 CPU cores and 8 CPU cores with 16 and 32 GB RAM respectively, and SSD storage. It is always good to benchmark on your data and monitor the resource usage on your nodes. You can upgrade or downgrade the nodes as per your findings.

Changing default ports; do not expose ports!

Running any type of service in a cloud involves different security risks. It is important that none of the ports used by Elasticsearch are exposed and accessible from the public internet. EC2 allows detailed control over which ports are accessible and from which IP addresses or subnets. Generally, you should not need to make any ports accessible from outside anywhere other than port 22 in order to log in remotely.

By default, Elasticsearch uses port 9200 for HTTP traffic and 9300 for inter-node communication. It is advisable to change these default ports by editing `elasticsearch.yml` on all nodes.

Proxy requests

Use a reverse proxy such as nginx (pronounced **engine x**) or Apache to proxy your requests to Elasticsearch/Kibana.

Binding HTTP to local addresses

You should run your Elasticsearch nodes in a **VPC (Virtual Private Cloud)**. More recently, AWS creates all nodes in a VPC. The nodes that do not need to interface with the clients accept the queries from clients over HTTP. This can be done by setting `http.host` in `elasticsearch.yml`. You can find out more about the HTTP host/port bindings in the reference documentation at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/elasticsearch/reference/current/modules-http.html>.

Installing the S3 repository plugin

It is important to back up your data in Elasticsearch regularly to restore the data if a catastrophic event occurs or if you want to revert to a last known healthy state. We will look at how to backup and restore using the snapshot/restore APIs of Elasticsearch in the next section. In order to take regular backups and store them in centralized and resilient data storage, we need to set up a snapshot mechanism. When you are running Elasticsearch in EC2, it makes sense to store snapshots in an AWS S3 bucket.

S3 stands for **Simple Storage Service**. It is a scalable, durable, and reliable storage service to store large amounts of data. It provides comprehensive security for your data and accessibility from many ...

Setting up periodic snapshots

Once you have a repository set up on S3, we need to ensure that actual snapshots are taken periodically. What this means is that we need a scheduled job that triggers the command to take a snapshot at regular intervals. The interval could be 15 minutes, 30 minutes, one hour, and so on, depending on the sensitivity of your data. We will see how to establish the snapshot/restore process for your cluster in depth later in this chapter.

These are some of the considerations that you have to address while running Elasticsearch in production on AWS or other clouds.

So far, we have covered how to get your production up and running on a managed cloud or self-hosted environment. If you opted to self-host, you will need to set up a backup and restore process so that you don't lose your data. The next section is only applicable if you are self-hosting your Elasticsearch cluster.

Backing up and restoring

Taking regular backups of your data to recover in the event of catastrophic failures is absolutely critical. It is important that all of your data is saved periodically at fixed time intervals and a sufficient number of such backups are preserved.

A common strategy is to take a full backup of your data at regular intervals and keep a fixed number of backups. Your cluster may be deployed on-premise in your own data center or it may be deployed on a cloud hosted service such as AWS, where you may be managing the cluster yourself.

We will look at the following topics on how to manage your backups and restore a specific backup if it is needed:

- Setting up a repository for snapshots
- Taking snapshots
- Restoring a specific ...

Setting up a repository for snapshots

The first step in setting up a regular backup process is setting up a repository for storing snapshots. There are different places where we could store snapshots:

- A shared filesystem
- Cloud or distributed filesystems (S3, Azure, GCS, or HDFS)

Depending upon where the Elasticsearch cluster is deployed, and which storage options are available, you may want to set up the repository for your snapshots in a certain way.

Let's first understand how you would do this in the simplest of scenarios, when you want to store it in a shared filesystem directory.

Shared filesystem

When your cluster has a shared filesystem accessible from all the nodes of the cluster, you have to ensure that the shared filesystem is accessible on a common path. You should mount that shared folder on all nodes and add the path of the mounted directory. The shared, mounted filesystem's path should be added to each node's `elasticsearch.yml` as follows:

```
path.repo: ["/mount/es_backups"]
```

If you are running a single node cluster and haven't set up a real distributed cluster, there is no need for a mounted shared drive. The `path.repo` parameter can be set to a local directory of your node. It is not recommended to run a production server on a single node cluster.

Once this setting is added to `config/elasticsearch.yml` on all ...

Cloud or distributed filesystems

When you are running your Elasticsearch cluster on AWS, Azure, or Google Cloud, it makes sense to store the snapshots in one of the alternatives provided by the cloud platform to store the data in robust, fault tolerant storage, rather than storing it on a shared drive.

Elasticsearch has official plugins that allow you to store the snapshots in S3. All you need to do is install the repository—`s3` plugin on all nodes of your cluster and set up the repository settings in a similar way to how we set up the shared filesystem repository:

```
curl -XPUT 'http://localhost:9200/_snapshot/backups' -H 'Content-Type: application/json'  
-d '{  
  "type": "s3",  
  "settings": {  
    "bucket": "bucket_name",  
    "region": "us-west",  
    ...  
  }  
'
```

The `type` should be `s3` and `settings` should have relevant values for `s3`.

Taking snapshots

Once the repository is set up, we can put named snapshots into a specific repository:

```
curl -XPUT 'http://localhost:9200/_snapshot/backups/backup_201905271530?pretty' -H  
'Content-Type: application/json' -d'{ "indices": "bigginsight,logstash-*",  
"ignore_unavailable": true, "include_global_state": false}'
```

In this command, we specified that we want a snapshot to be taken in the repository `backups` with the name `backup_201905271530`. The name of the snapshot could be anything, but it should help you identify the snapshot at a later stage. One typical strategy would be to take a snapshot every 30 minutes and set snapshot names with prefixes such as `backup_yyyyMMddHHmm`. In the event of any failure, you could then identify the snapshot ...

Restoring a specific snapshot

If the need arises, you can restore the state from a specific snapshot using the following command:

```
curl -XPOST 'http://localhost:9200/_snapshot/backups/backup_201905271530/_restore'
```

This will restore the `backup_201905271530` snapshot from the `backups` repository.

Once we have set up a periodic job that takes and stores a snapshot, we are safe in the event of any failure. We now have a cluster that is recoverable from any disaster-like situation. Remember, the output of snapshots should be stored in resilient storage. At least, it should not be saved on the same Elasticsearch cluster; it should be saved on different storage, preferably a robust filesystem that is highly available, such as S3, HDFS, and so on.

So far in this chapter, we have got up and running with a cluster that is reliable and is backed up regularly. In the upcoming sections, we will see how to address some common scenarios in data modeling. We will see some common strategies for setting up aliases for indexes, index templates, modeling time-series data, and so on.

Setting up index aliases

Index aliases let you create aliases for one or more indexes or index name patterns. We will cover the following topics in order to learn how index aliases work:

- Understanding index aliases
- How index aliases can help

Understanding index aliases

An index alias just provides an extra name to refer to an index; it can be defined in the following way:

```
POST /_aliases
{
  "actions" : [
    { "add" : { "index" : "index1", "alias" : "current_index" } }
  ]
}
```

Here, `index1` can be referred to with the alias `current_index`. Similarly, the index alias can be removed with the `remove` action of the `_aliases` REST API:

```
POST /_aliases
{
  "actions" : [
    { "remove" : { "index" : "index1", "alias" : "current_index" } }
  ]
}
```

The preceding call will remove the alias `current_index`. Two actions can be combined in a single invocation of the `_aliases` API. When two calls are combined, the operations are done automatically. For example, the following call would be completely transparent to the client:

```
POST /_aliases
{
  "actions" : [
    { "remove" : { "index" : "index1", "alias" : "current_index" } },
    { "add" : { "index" : "index2", "alias" : "current_index" } }
  ]
}
```

Before the call, the alias `current_index` was referring to the index `index1`, and after the call, the alias will refer to the index `index2`.

How index aliases can help

Once in production, it often happens that we need to reindex data from one index to another. We might have one or more applications developed in Java, Python, .NET, or other programming environments that may be referring to these indexes. In the event that the production index needs to be changed from `index1` to `index2`, it will require a change in all client applications.

Aliases come to the rescue here. They offer extra flexibility, and hence, they are a recommended feature to use in production. The key thing is to create an alias for your production index and use the alias instead of the actual index name in the client applications that use them.

In the event that the current production index needs to change, we ...

Setting up index templates

One important step while setting up your index is defining the mapping for the types, number of shards, replica, and other configurations. Depending upon the complexity of the types within your index, this step can involve a substantial amount of configuration.

Index templates allow you to create indexes based on a given template, rather than creating each index manually beforehand. Index templates allow you to specify settings and mappings for the index to be created. Let's understand this by going through the following points:

- Defining an index template
- Creating indexes on the fly

Let's say we want to store sensor data from various devices and we want to create one index per day. At the beginning of every day, we want a new index to be created whenever the first sensor reading is indexed for that day. We will look into the details of why we should use such time-based indexes in the next section.

Defining an index template

We start by defining an index template:

```
PUT _template/readings_template
1{ "index_patterns": ["readings*"],
2 "settings": {                                3   "number_of_shards": 1 },
"mappings": {                                4   "properties": {
"type": "keyword"      },      "timestamp": {      "type": "date"
"reading": {      "type": "double"    }  }}}
```

In this `_template` call, we define the following things:

- A template with the name `readings_template`.
- The index name patterns that will match this template. We configured `readings*` as the one and only index pattern. Any attempt to index into an index that does not exist but matches this pattern would use this template.
- The settings to be applied to the newly created index from this template.
- The mappings to be applied to the newly ...

Creating indexes on the fly

When any client tries to index the data for a particular sensor device, it should use the index name with the current day appended in `yyyy-mm-dd` format after `readings`. A call to index data for `2019-05-01` would look like the following:

```
POST /readings-2019-05-01/_doc
{
  "sensorId": "a11111",
  "timestamp": 1483228800000,
  "reading": 1.02
}
```

When the first record for the date `2019-05-01` is being inserted, the client should use the index name `readings-2019-05-01`. Since this index doesn't exist yet, and we have an index template in place, Elasticsearch creates a new index using the index template we defined. As a result, the settings and mappings defined in our index template get applied to this new index.

This is how we create indexes based on index templates. In the next section, let's understand why these types of time-based indexes are useful and how to use them in production with your time-series data.

Modeling time series data

Often, we have a need to store time series data in Elasticsearch. Typically, one would create a single index to hold all documents. This typical approach of one big index to hold all documents has its own limitations, especially for the following reasons:

- Scaling the index with an unpredictable volume over time
- Changing the mapping over time
- Automatically deleting older documents

Let's look at how each problem manifests itself when we choose a single monolithic index.

Scaling the index with unpredictable volume over time

One of the most difficult choices when creating an Elasticsearch cluster and its indexes is deciding how many primary shards should be created and how many replica shards should be created.

Let's understand how the number of shards becomes important in the following sub-sections:

- Unit of parallelism in Elasticsearch:
 - The effect of the number of shards on the relevance score
 - The effect of the number of shards on the accuracy of aggregations

Unit of parallelism in Elasticsearch

We have to decide the number of shards at the time of creating the index. The number of shards cannot be changed once the index has been created. There is no golden rule that will help you decide how many shards should be created at the time of creating an index. The number of shards actually decides the level of parallelism in the index. Let's understand this by taking an example of how a search query might be executed.

When a search or aggregation query is sent by a client, it is first received by one of the nodes in the cluster. That node acts as a coordinator for that request. The coordinating node sends requests to all the shards on the cluster and waits for the response from all shards. Once the ...

The effect of the number of shards on the relevance score

A large number of small shards is not always the solution, as it can affect the relevance of the search results. In the context of search queries, the relevance score is calculated within the context of a shard. The relative frequencies of documents are calculated within the context of each shard and not across all shards. This is why the number of shards can affect the overall scores observed for a query. In particular, having too many shards to address the future scalability problem is not a solution.

The effect of the number of shards on the accuracy of aggregations

Similar to the execution of the search query, an aggregation query is also coordinated by a coordinating node. Let's say that the client has requested terms aggregation on a field that can take a large number of unique values. By default, the terms aggregation returns the top 10 terms to the client.

To coordinate the execution of terms aggregation, the coordinator node does not request all the buckets from all shards. All shards are requested to give their top n buckets. By default, this number, n , is equal to the `size` parameter of the terms aggregation, that is, the number of top buckets that the client has requested. So, if the client requested the top 10 terms, the coordinating ...

Changing the mapping over time

Once an index is created and documents start getting stored, the requirements can change. There is only one thing that is constant, **change**.

When the schema changes, the following types of change may happen with respect to the schema:

- New fields get added
- Existing fields get removed

New fields get added

When the first document with a new field gets indexed, the new field's mapping is automatically created if it doesn't already exist. Elasticsearch infers the datatype of the field based on the value of that field in the first document in order to create the mapping. The mappings of one particular type of document can grow over a period of time.

Once a document with a new field is indexed, the mapping is created for that new field and its mapping remains.

Existing fields get removed

Over a period of time, the requirements of a project can change. Some fields might become obsolete and may no longer be used. In the case of Elasticsearch indexes, the fields that are no longer used are not removed automatically; the mapping remains in the index for all the fields that were ever indexed. Each extra field in the Elasticsearch index carries an overhead; this is especially true if you have hundreds or thousands of fields. If, in your use case, you have a very high number of fields that are not used, it can increase the burden on your cluster.

Automatically deleting older documents

No cluster has an infinite capacity to retain data forever. With the volume growing over a period of time, you may decide to only store necessary data in Elasticsearch. Typically, you may want to retain data for the past few weeks, months, or years in Elasticsearch, depending on your use case.

Prior to Elasticsearch 2.x, this was achieved using **TTL (Time to Live)** set on individual documents. Each document could be configured to remain in the index for a configurable amount of time. But, the TTL feature was deprecated with the 2.x version because of its overheads in maintaining time-to-live on a per-document basis.

We have seen some problems that we might face while dealing with time series data. Now, ...

How index-per-timeframe solves these issues

Instead of going with one big monolithic index, we now create one index per timeframe. The timeframe could be one day, one week, one month, or any arbitrary time duration. For example, in our example in the *Index Template* section, we chose index-per-day. The names of the index would reflect that—we had indexes such as `readings-2019-05-01`, `readings-2019-05-02`, and so on. If we had chosen index-per-month, the index names would look like `readings-2019-04`, `readings-2019-05`, `readings-2019-06`, and so on.

Let's look at how this scheme solves the issues we saw earlier one by one.

Scaling with index-per-timeframe

Since we no longer have a monolithic index that needs to hold all historic data, scaling up or scaling down according to the recent volumes becomes easier. The choice of the number of shards is not an upfront and permanent decision. Start with an initial estimated number of shards for the given time period. This number, the chosen number of shards, can be put in the index template.

Since that choice of shards can be changed before the next timeframe begins, you are not stuck with a bad choice. With each time period, it gives a chance to adjust the index template to increase or decrease the number of shards for the next index to be created.

Changing the mapping over time

Changing the mapping becomes easier, as we could just update the index template that is used for creating new indexes. When the index template is updated, the new index that is created for the new timeframe uses the new mappings in the template.

Again, each timeframe gives us an opportunity to change.

Automatically deleting older documents

With time-based indexes, deleting the older documents becomes easier. We could just drop older indexes rather than delete individual documents. If we were using monthly indexes and wanted to enforce six-month retention of data, we could delete all indexes older than 6 months. This may be set up as a scheduled job to look for and delete older indexes.

As we have seen in this section, setting up index-per-timeframe has obvious advantages when we are dealing with time-series data.

Summary

In this chapter, we have seen essential techniques necessary to take your next Elastic Stack application to production. We have seen various deployment options, including cloud-based and on-premise. We have seen how to use a managed cloud service provider such as Elastic Cloud and have also covered how to self-host Elastic Stack. We have covered some common concerns and decision choices that you will face, whether you self-host or use a managed cloud provider.

Additionally, we have seen various techniques useful in a production-grade Elastic Stack deployment. These include the usage of index aliases, index templates, and modeling time-series data. This is definitely not a comprehensive guide covering all the nuances of running Elastic Stack in production, but we have definitely covered enough for you to comfortably take your next Elastic Stack project to production.

Equipped with all these techniques, we will build a sensor data analytics application in the next chapter, [chapter 10](#), *Building a Sensor Data Analytics Application*.

Building a Sensor Data Analytics Application

In the previous chapter, we saw how you can take an Elastic Stack application to production. Armed with all the knowledge of the Elastic Stack and the techniques for taking applications to production, we are ready to apply these concepts in a real-world application. In this chapter, we will build one such application using the Elastic Stack that can handle a large amount of data, applying the techniques that we have learned so far.

We will cover the following topics as we build a sensor-data analytics application:

- Introduction to the application
- Modeling data in Elasticsearch
- Setting up the metadata database
- Building the Logstash data pipeline
- Sending data to Logstash over HTTP
- Visualizing the ...

Introduction to the application

The internet of things (**IoT**) has found a wide range of applications in modern times. IoT can be defined as follows:

The Internet of things (IoT) is the collective web of connected smart devices that can sense and communicate with each other by exchanging data via the Internet.

IoT devices are connected to the internet; they **sense** and **communicate**. They are equipped with different types of sensors that collect the data they observe and transmit it over the internet. This data can be stored, analyzed, and often acted upon in near-real time. The number of such connected devices is projected to rise rapidly; according to Wikipedia, there will be an estimated 30 billion connected devices by 2020. Since each device can capture the current value of a metric and transmit it over the internet, this can result in massive amounts of data.

A plethora of different types of sensors have emerged in recent times for temperature, humidity, light, motion, and airflow; these can be used in different types of applications. Each sensor can be programmed to take a current reading and send it over the internet.

Let's consider the following diagram for our understanding:

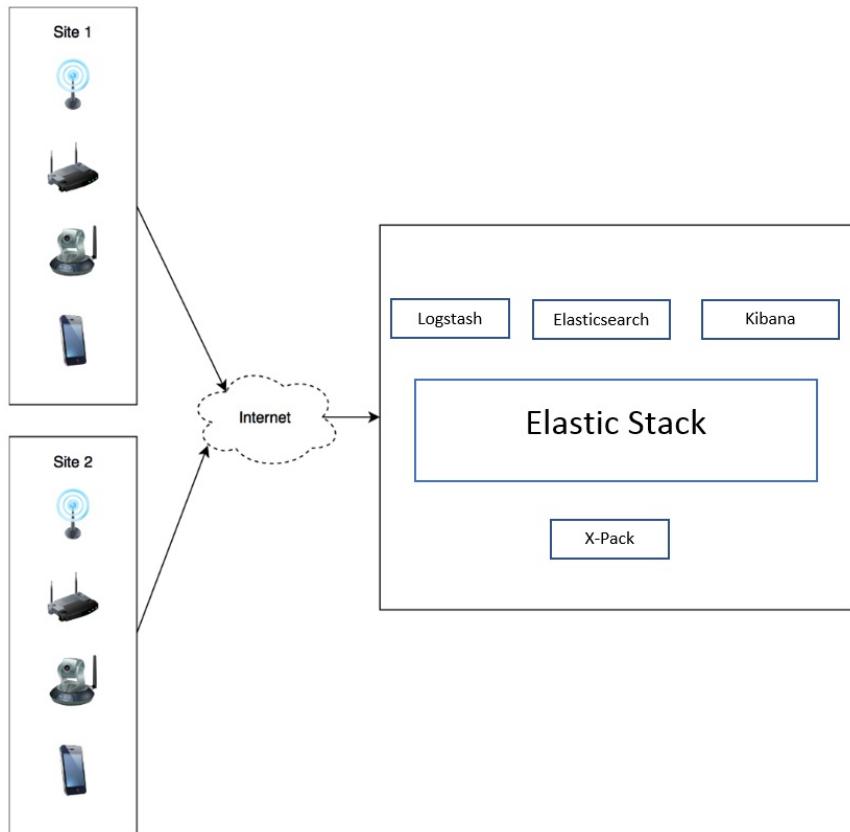


Figure 10.1: Connected devices and sensors sending data to Elastic Stack

Figure 10.1 provides an idea of the high-level architecture of the system that we will discuss in this chapter. The left-hand side of the figure depicts various types of devices equipped with sensors. These devices are capable of capturing different metrics and sending them over the internet for long-term storage and analysis. In the right half of the figure, you see the server-side components on the other side of the internet. The server-side components primarily consist of the Elastic Stack.

In this chapter, we will look at an application in which we want to store and analyze sensor data from two types of sensors: temperature and humidity sensors, placed at various locations.

Sensors can be deployed across multiple sites or locations, with each site connected to the internet as shown in the figure. Our example demonstrates two types of sensors, temperature, and humidity, but the application can be extended to support any kind of sensor data.

We will cover the following points about the system in this section:

- Understanding the sensor-generated data
- Understanding the sensor metadata
- Understanding the final stored data

Let's go deep into the application by understanding each topic one by one.

Understanding the sensor-generated data

What does the data look like when it is generated by the sensor? The sensor sends JSON-format data over the internet and each reading looks like the following:

```
{ "sensor_id": 1, "time": 1511935948000, "value": 21.89}
```

Here, we can see the following:

- The `sensor_id` field is the unique identifier of the sensor that has emitted the record.
- The `time` field is the time of the reading in milliseconds since the epoch, that is, 00:00:00 on January 1, 1970.
- The `value` field is the actual metric value emitted by the sensor.

This type of JSON payload is generated every minute by all the sensors in the system. Since all sensors are registered in the system, the server-side system has the associated metadata with ...

Understanding the sensor metadata

The metadata about all the sensors across all locations is available to us in a relational database. In our example, we have stored it in MySQL. This type of metadata can be stored in any relational database other than MySQL. It can also be stored in Elasticsearch in an index.

The metadata about sensors primarily contains the following details:

- **Type of sensor:** What type of sensor is it? It can be a temperature sensor, a humidity sensor, and so on.
- **Location-related metadata:** Where is the sensor with the given sensor ID physically located? Which customer is it associated with?

This information is stored in the following three tables in MySQL:

- `sensor_type`: Defines various sensor types and their `sensor_type_id`:

<code>sensor_type_id</code>	<code>sensor_type</code>
1	Temperature
2	Humidity

- `location`: This defines locations with their latitude/longitude and address within a physical building:

<code>location_id</code>	<code>customer</code>	<code>department</code>	<code>building_name</code>	<code>room</code>	<code>floor</code>	<code>location_on_floor</code>	<code>latitude</code>	<code>longitude</code>
1	Abc Labs	R & D	222 Broadway	101	1	C-101	40.710936	-74.08500

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

- `sensors`: This maps `sensor_id` with sensor types and locations:

sensor_id	sensor_type_id	location_id
1	1	1
2	2	1

Given this database design, it is possible to look up all of the metadata associated with the given `sensor_id` using the following SQL query:

```

select
    st.sensor_type as sensorType,
    l.customer as customer,
    l.department as department,
    l.building_name as buildingName,
    l.room as room,
    l.floor as floor,
    l.location_on_floor as locationOnFloor,
    l.latitude,
    l.longitude
from
    sensors s
        inner join
    sensor_type st ON s.sensor_type_id = st.sensor_type_id
        inner join
    location l ON s.location_id = l.location_id
where
    s.sensor_id = 1;

```

The result of the previous query will look like this:

senso rType	cust ome r	depar tment	buildin gName	ro o m	fl oo r	location OnFloor	latit ude	longi tude
Temperature	Abc Labs	R & D	222 Broadway	101	Floor1	C-101	40.710936	-74.085

Up until now, we have seen the format of incoming sensor data from the client side. We have also established a mechanism to look up the associated metadata for the given sensor.

Next, we will see what the final enriched record should look like.

Understanding the final stored data

By combining the data that is coming from the client side and contains the sensor's metric value for a given metric at a given time, we can construct an enriched record of the following fields:

- `sensorId`
- `sensorType`
- `customer`
- `department`

- `buildingName`
- `room`
- `floor`
- `locationOnFloor`
- `latitude`
- `longitude`
- `time`
- `reading`

Field numbers 1, 11, and 12 are present in the payload sent by the sensor to our application. The remaining fields are looked up or enriched using the SQL query that we saw in the previous section – using the `sensorId`. This way, we can generate a denormalized sensor reading record for every sensor for every minute.

We have understood what the application is about and what the data represents. As we ...

Modeling data in Elasticsearch

We have seen the structure of the final record after enriching the data. That should help us model the data in Elasticsearch. Given that our data is time series data, we can apply some of the techniques mentioned in [Chapter 9, Running the Elastic Stack in Production](#), to model the data:

- Defining an index template
- Understanding the mapping

Let's look at the index template that we will define.

Defining an index template

Since we are going to be storing time series data that is immutable, we do not want to create one big monolithic index. We'll use the techniques discussed in the *Modeling time series data* section in [Chapter 9, Running the Elastic Stack in Production](#).

The source code of the application in this chapter is within the GitHub repository at <https://github.com/pranav-shukla/learningelasticsearch/tree/v7.0/chapter-10>. As we go through the chapter, we will perform the steps mentioned in the `README.md` file located at that path.

Please create the index template mentioned in *Step 1* of the `README.md` file or execute the following script in your Kibana Dev Tools Console:

```
POST _template/sensor_data_template{ "index_patterns": [ ...
```

Understanding the mapping

The mapping that we defined in the index template contains all the fields that will be present in the denormalized record after lookup. A few things to notice in the index template mapping are as follows:

- All the fields that contain a `text` type of data are stored as the `keyword` type; additionally, they are stored as `text` in an analyzed field. For example, please have a look at the `customer` field.
- The latitude and longitude fields that we had in the enriched data are now mapped to a `geo_point` type of field with the field name of `location`.

At this point, we have defined an index template that will trigger the creation of an index with the mapping we defined in the template.

Setting up the metadata database

We need to have a database that has metadata about the sensors. This database will hold the tables that we discussed in the *Introduction to the application* section.

We are storing the data in a relational database MySQL, but you can use any other relational database equally well. Since we are using MySQL, we will be using the MySQL JDBC driver to connect to the database. Please ensure that you have the following things set up on your system:

1. MySQL database community version 5.5, 5.6, or 5.7. You can use an existing database if you already have it on your system.
2. Install the downloaded MySQL database and log in with the root user.

Execute the script available https://github.com/pranav-shukla/learningelastictac/tree/v7.0/chapter-10/files/create_sensor_metadata.sql ...

Building the Logstash data pipeline

Having set up the mechanism to automatically create the Elasticsearch index and the metadata database, we can now focus on building the data pipeline using Logstash. What should our data pipeline do? It should perform the following steps:

- Accept JSON requests over the web (over HTTP).
- Enrich the JSON with the metadata we have in the MySQL database.
- Store the resulting documents in Elasticsearch.

These three main functions that we want to perform correspond exactly with the Logstash data pipeline's input, filter, and output plugins, respectively. The full Logstash configuration file for this data pipeline is in the code base at https://github.com/pranav-shukla/learningelasticsearch/tree/v7.0/chapter-10/files/logstash_sensor_data_http.conf.

Let us look at how to achieve the end goal of our data pipeline by following the aforementioned steps. We will start with accepting JSON requests over the web (over HTTP).

Accepting JSON requests over the web

This function is achieved by the input plugin. Logstash has support for the `http` input plugin, which does precisely that. It builds an HTTP interface using different types of payloads that can be submitted to Logstash as an input.

The relevant part from `logstash_sensor_data_http.conf`, which has the input filter, is as follows:

```
input { http { id => "sensor_data_http_input" }}
```

Here, the `id` field is a string that can uniquely identify this input filter later in the file if needed. We will not need to reference this name in the file; we just choose the name `sensor_data_http_input`.

The reference documentation of the HTTP input plugin is available at: [https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/logstash/current/plugins-inputs-http.html ...](https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/logstash/current/plugins-inputs-http.html)

Enriching the JSON with the metadata we have in the MySQL database

The enrichment and other processing parts of the data pipeline can be done using filter plugins. We have built a relational database that contains the tables and necessary lookup data for enriching the incoming JSON requests.

Logstash has a `jdbc_streaming` filter plugin that can be used to do lookups from any relational database and enrich the incoming JSON documents. Let's zoom into the filter plugin section in our Logstash configuration file:

```
filter {
    jdbc_streaming {
        jdbc_driver_library => "/path/to/mysql-connector-java-5.1.45-bin.jar"
        jdbc_driver_class => "com.mysql.jdbc.Driver"
        jdbc_connection_string => "jdbc:mysql://localhost:3306/sensor_metadata"
        jdbc_user => "root"
        jdbc_password => "<password>"
        statement => "select st.sensor_type as sensorType, l.customer as customer,
        l.department as department, l.building_name as buildingName, l.room as room, l.floor as
        floor, l.location_on_floor as locationOnFloor, l.latitude, l.longitude from sensors s
        inner join sensor_type st on s.sensor_type_id=st.sensor_type_id inner join location l on
        s.location_id=l.location_id where s.sensor_id= :sensor_identifier"
        parameters => { "sensor_identifier" => "sensor_id" }
        target => lookupResult
    }

    mutate {
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][sensorType]" => "sensorType"}
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][customer]" => "customer"}
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][department]" => "department"}
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][buildingName]" => "buildingName"}
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][room]" => "room"}
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][floor]" => "floor"}
        rename => {"[lookupResult][0][locationOnFloor]" => "locationOnFloor"}
        add_field => {
            "location" => "%{[lookupResult][0][latitude]},%{[lookupResult][0][longitude]}"
        }
        remove_field => ["lookupResult", "headers", "host"]
    }
}
```

As you will notice, there are two filter plugins used in the file:

- `jdbc_streaming`
- `mutate`

Let's see what each filter plugin is doing.

The `jdbc_streaming` plugin

We essentially specify the whereabouts of the database that we want to connect to, the username/password, the JDBC driver `.jar` file, and the class. We already created the database in the *Setting up the metadata database* section.

Download the latest MySQL JDBC Driver, also known as **Connector/J**, from <https://dev.mysql.com/downloads/connector/j/>. At the time of writing this book, the latest version is 5.1.45, which works with MySQL 5.5, 5.6, and 5.7. Download the `.tar`/`.zip` file containing the driver and extract it into your system. The path of this extracted `.jar` file should be updated in the `jdbc_driver_library` parameter.

To summarize, you should review and update the following parameters in the Logstash configuration ...

The mutate plugin

As we have seen in the previous section, the output of the `jdbc_streaming` filter plugin has some undesired aspects. Our JSON payload needs the following modifications:

- Move the looked-up fields that are under `lookupResult` directly into the JSON file.
- Combine the latitude and longitude fields under `lookupResult` as a location field.
- Remove the unnecessary fields.

```
mutate {  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][sensorType]" => "sensorType"}  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][customer]" => "customer"}  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][department]" => "department"}  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][buildingName]" => "buildingName"}  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][room]" => "room"}  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][floor]" => "floor"}  
    rename => {"[lookupResult][0][locationOnFloor]" => "locationOnFloor"}  
    add_field => {  
        "location" => "%{lookupResult[0]latitude},%{lookupResult[0]longitude}"  
    }  
    remove_field => ["lookupResult", "headers", "host"]  
}
```

Let's see how the `mutate` filter plugin achieves these objectives.

Moving the looked-up fields that are under `lookupResult` directly in JSON

As we have seen, `lookupResult` is an array with just one element: the element at index `0` in the array. We need to move all the fields under this array element directly under the JSON payload. This is done field by field using the `rename` operation.

For example, the following operation renames the existing `sensorType` field directly under the JSON payload:

```
rename => {"[lookupResult][0][sensorType]" => "sensorType"}
```

We do this for all the looked-up fields that are returned by the SQL query.

Combining the latitude and longitude fields under `lookupResult` as a location field

Remember when we defined the index template mapping for our index? We defined the `location` field to be of `geo_point` type. The `geo_point` type accepts a value that is formatted as a string with latitude and longitude appended together, separated by a comma.

This is achieved by using the `add_field` operation to construct the `location` field, as follows:

```
add_field => {
  "location" => "%{[lookupResult][0][latitude]},%{[lookupResult][0][longitude]}"
}
```

By now, we should have a new field called `location` added to our JSON payload, exactly as desired. Next, we will remove the undesirable fields.

Removing the unnecessary fields

After moving all the elements from the `lookupResult` field directly in the JSON, we don't need that field anymore. Similarly, we don't want to store the `headers` or the `host` fields in the Elasticsearch index, so we remove them all at once using the following operation:

```
remove_field => ["lookupResult", "headers", "host"]
```

We finally have the JSON payload in the structure that we want in the Elasticsearch index. Next, let us see how to send it to Elasticsearch.

Store the resulting documents in Elasticsearch

We use the Elasticsearch output plugin that comes with Logstash to send data to Elasticsearch. The usage is very simple; we just need to have `elasticsearch` under the output tag, as follows:

```
output {
  elasticsearch {
    hosts => ["localhost:9200"]
    index => "sensor_data-%{+YYYY.MM.dd}"
  }
}
```

We have specified `hosts` and `index` to send the data to the right index within the right cluster. Notice that the index name has `%{+YYYY.MM.dd}`. This calculates the index name to be used by using the event's current time and formats the time in this format.

Remember that we had defined an index template with the index pattern `sensor_data*`. When the first event is sent on May 26, 2019, the output plugin defined here will send the event to index `sensor_data-2019.05.26`.

If you want to send events to a secured Elasticsearch cluster as we did when we used X-Pack in [chapter 8](#), *Elastic X-Pack*, you can configure the `user` and `password` parameters as follows:

```
output {
  elasticsearch {
    hosts => ["localhost:9200"]
    index => "sensor_data-%{+YYYY.MM.dd}"
    user => "elastic"
    password => "elastic"
  }
}
```

This way, we will have one index for every day, where each day's data will be stored within its index. We had learned the index per time frame in [chapter 9](#), *Running the Elastic Stack in Production*.

Now that we have our Logstash data pipeline ready, let's send some data.

Sending data to Logstash over HTTP

At this point, sensors can start sending their readings to the Logstash data pipeline that we have created in the previous section. They just need to send the data as follows:

```
curl -XPOST -u sensor_data:sensor_data --header "Content-Type: application/json"  
"http://localhost:8080/" -d '{"sensor_id":1,"time":1512102540000,"reading":16.24}'
```

Since we don't have real sensors, we will simulate the data by sending these types of requests. The simulated data and script that send this data are incorporated in the code at <https://github.com/pranav-shukla/learningelasticsearch/tree/master/chapter-10/data>.

If you are on Linux or macOS, open the Terminal and change the directory to your Learning Elasticstack workspace ...

Visualizing the data in Kibana

We have successfully set up the Logstash data pipeline and loaded some data using the pipeline into Elasticsearch. It is time to explore the data and build a dashboard that will help us gain some insights into the data.

Let's start by doing a sanity check to see if the data is loaded correctly. We can do so by going to Kibana Dev Tools and executing the following query:

```
GET /sensor_data-*/_search?size=0&track_total_hits=true
{
  "query": {"match_all": {}}
}
```

This query will search data across all indices matching the `sensor_data-*` pattern. There should be a good number of records in the index if the data was indexed correctly.

We will cover the following topics:

- Set up an index pattern in Kibana
- Build visualizations
- Create a dashboard using the visualizations

Let's go through each step.

Setting up an index pattern in Kibana

Before we can start building visualizations, we need to set up the index pattern for all indexes that we will potentially have for the Sensor Data Analytics application. We need to do this because our index names are dynamic. We will have one index per day, but we want to be able to create visualizations and dashboards that work across multiple indices of sensor data even when there are multiple indices. To do this, click on the **Index Patterns** link under the Manage and Administer the Elastic Stack section, as follows:

The screenshot shows the Kibana home page at localhost:5601/app/kibana#/home?_g=1. The left sidebar contains various navigation links. The main content area has two main sections: "Add Data to Kibana" and "Manage and Administer the Elastic Stack". The "Manage and Administer the Elastic Stack" section is highlighted with a red box around the "Index Patterns" item.

Add Data to Kibana

Use these solutions to quickly turn your data into pre-built dashboards and monitoring systems.

- APM**: APM automatically collects in-depth performance metrics and errors from inside your applications. [Add APM](#)
- Logging**: Ingest logs from popular data sources and easily visualize in preconfigured dashboards. [Add log data](#)
- Metrics**: Collect metrics from the operating system and services running on your servers. [Add metric data](#)
- Security analytics**: Centralize security events for interactive investigation in ready-to-go visualizations. [Add security events](#)

Add sample data, **Upload data from log file**, **Use Elasticsearch data**

Visualize and Explore Data

- APM**: Automatically collect in-depth performance metrics and errors from inside your applications.
- Canvas**: Showcase your data in a pixel-perfect way.
- Dashboard**: Display and share a collection of visualizations and saved searches.
- Discover**: Interactively explore your data by querying and filtering raw documents.

Manage and Administer the Elastic Stack

- Console**: Skip cURL and use this JSON interface to work with your data directly.
- Index Patterns**: Manage the index patterns that help retrieve your data from Elasticsearch. **This item is highlighted with a red box.**
- Monitoring**: Track the real-time health and performance of your Elastic Stack.
- Rollups**: Summarize and store historical data in a smaller index for future analysis.

Figure 10.2: Creating an index pattern

In the Index pattern field, type in `sensor_data*` ...

Building visualizations

Before we embark on an analytics project, we often already have some questions that we want to get answered quickly from visualizations. These visualizations, which answer different questions, may be packaged as a dashboard or may be used as, and when, needed. We will also start with some questions and try to build visualizations to get answers to those questions.

We will try to answer the following questions:

- How does the average temperature change over time?
- How does the average humidity change over time?
- How do temperature and humidity change at each location over time?
- Can I visualize temperature and humidity over a map?
- How are the sensors distributed across departments?

Let's build visualizations to get the answers, starting with the first question.

How does the average temperature change over time?

Here, we are just looking for an aggregate statistic. We want to know the average temperature across all temperature sensors regardless of their location or any other criteria. As we saw in [Chapter 7, Visualizing Data with Kibana](#), we should go to the Visualize tab to create new visualizations and click on the button with a **+ Create a Visualization** button.

Choose Line Chart, and then choose the `sensor_data*` index pattern as the source for the new visualization. On the next screen, to configure the line chart, follow steps 1 to 5, as shown in the following screenshot:



Figure 10.5: Creating the ...

How does the average humidity change over time?

This question is very similar to the previous question. We can reuse the previous visualization, make a slight modification, and create another copy to answer this question. We will start by opening the first visualization, which we saved with the name `Average temperature over time`.

Execute the steps as follows to update the visualization:

1. Click on the filter with the **sensorType: Temperature** label and click on the **Edit Filter** action.
2. Change the Filter value from **Temperature** to **Humidity** and click on Save.
3. Modify Custom Label from `Average Temperature` to `Average Humidity` and click on the Apply changes button, as shown in the following screenshot.

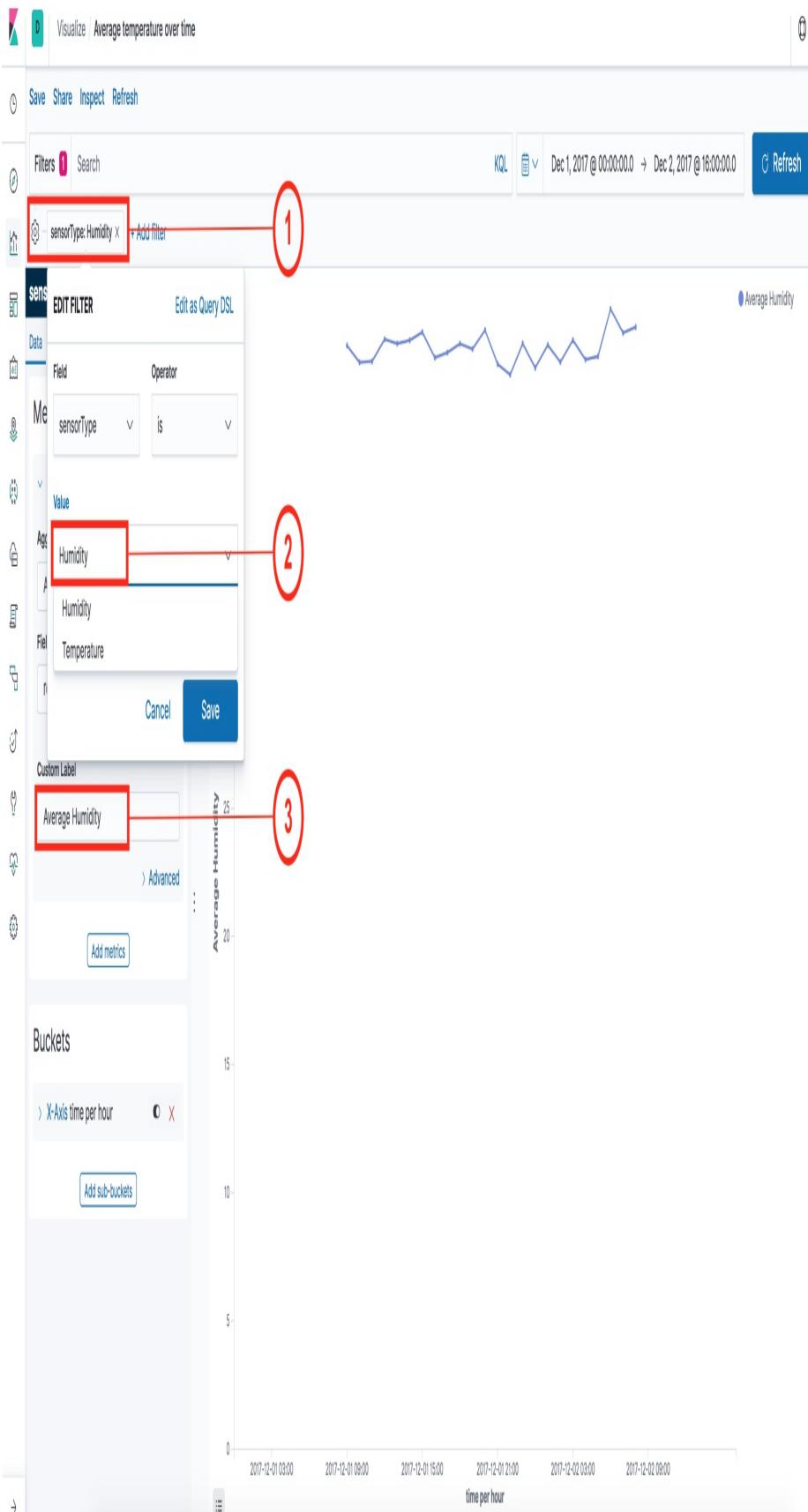


Figure 10.6: Creating the visualization for average humidity over time

As you will see, the chart gets updated for the Humidity sensors. You can click on the **Save** link at the top navigation bar. You can give a new name to the visualization, such as `Average humidity over time`, check the Save as a new visualization box, and click on Save. This completes our second visualization and answers our second question.

How do temperature and humidity change at each location over time?

This time, we are looking to get more details than the first two questions. We want to know how the temperature and humidity vary at each location over time. We will solve it for temperature.

Go to the Visualizations tab in Kibana and create a new Line chart visualization, the same as before:



Figure 10.7: Creating the visualization for temperature at locations over time

1. Add a filter for **sensorType: Temperature** as we did before.
2. Set up the **Metrics** section exactly same as the first chart that we created, that is `Average Temperature over time` on the `reading` field.
3. Since we are ...

Can I visualize temperature and humidity over a map?

We can visualize temperature and humidity over the map using the **Coordinate Map** visualization. Create a new Coordinate Map visualization by going to the **Visualize** tab and clicking the + icon to create a new visualization, and perform the following steps as shown in the following screenshot:

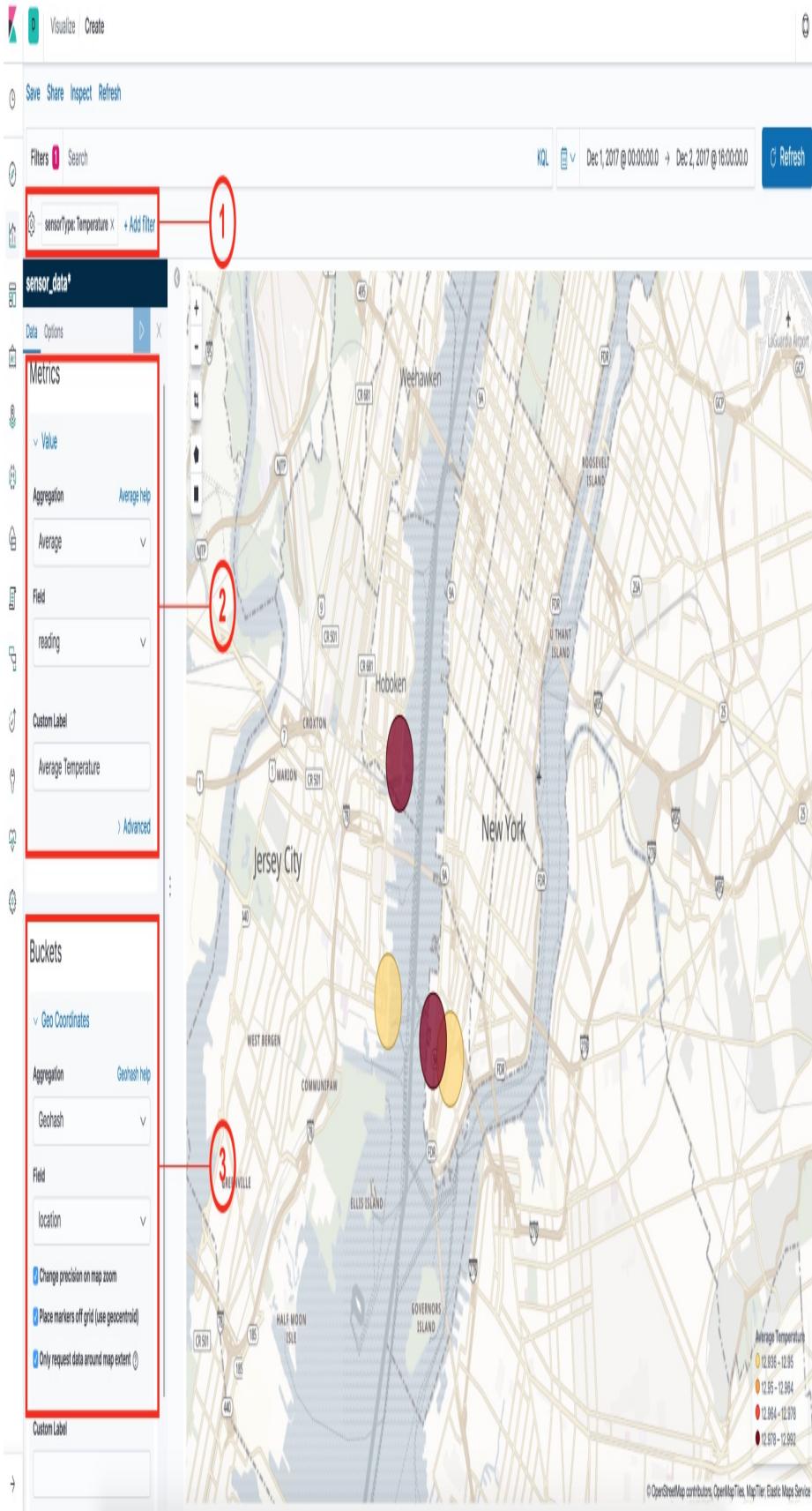


Figure 10.8: Creating a visualization to view sensor locations over a map

1. As in previous visualizations, add a filter for the **sensorType: Temperature**.
2. In the Metrics section, choose **Average** aggregation on the reading field as done previously.
3. Since this is a Coordinate Map, we need to choose the **GeoHash** grid aggregation and then select the geo_point field that we have in our data. The **location** is the field to aggregate.

As you can see, it helps in visualizing our data on the map. We can immediately see the average temperature at each site when we hover over a specific location. Focus on the relevant part of the map and save the visualization with the name `Temperature over locations`.

You can create a similar **Coordinate Map** visualization for the Humidity sensors.

How are the sensors distributed across departments?

What if we want to see how the sensors distributed across different departments? Remember, we have the `department` field in our data, which we obtained after enriching the data using the `sensor_id`. Pie charts are particularly useful to visualize how data is distributed across multiple values of a `keyword` type field, such as `department`. We will start by creating a new pie chart visualization.

Follow the steps as shown in the following screenshot:

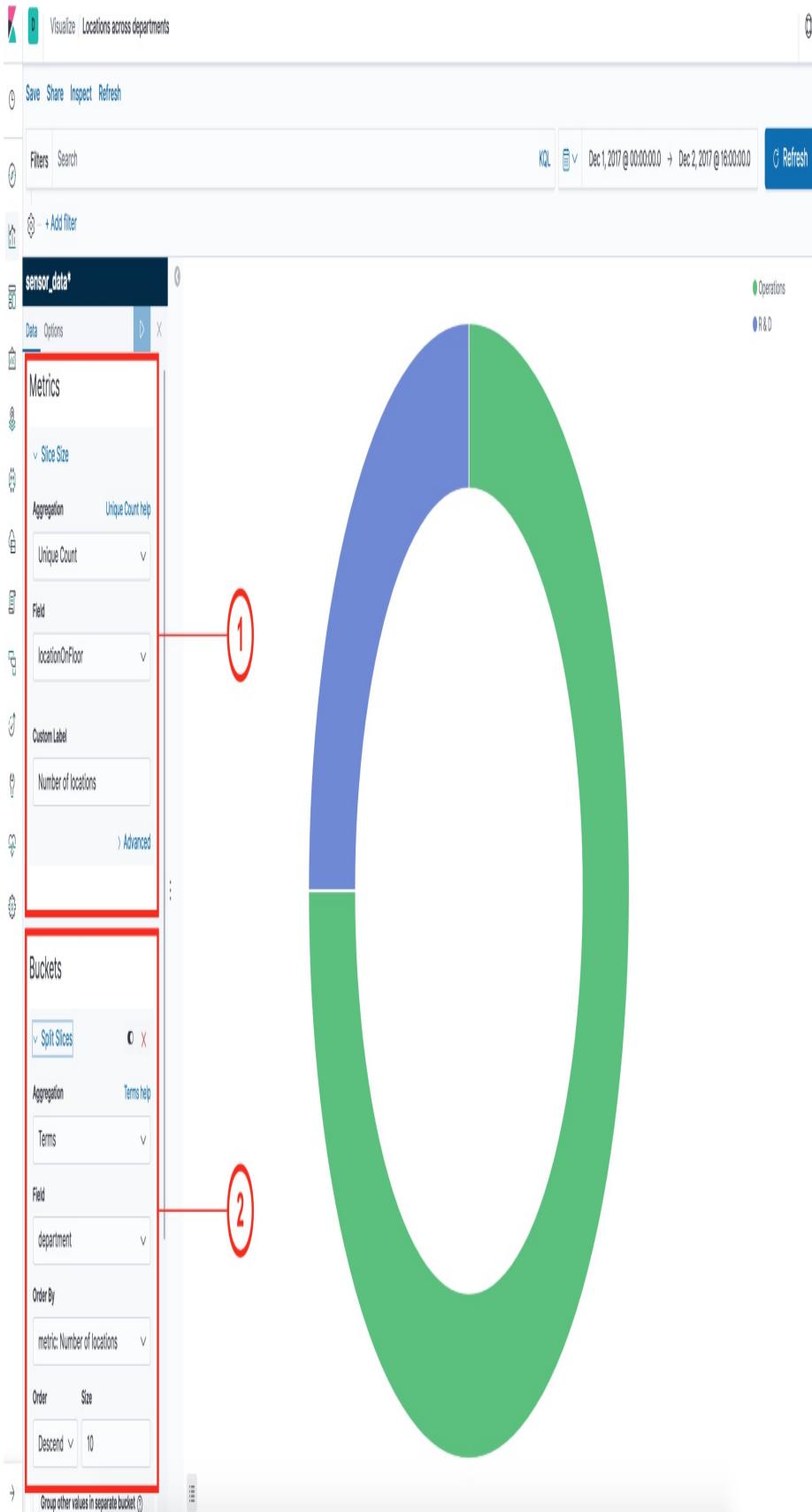


Figure 10.9: Creating a visualization for locations across departments

1. In the Metrics section, choose **Unique Count** aggregation and the **locationOnFloor ...**

Creating a dashboard

A dashboard lets you organize multiple visualizations together, save them, and share them with other people. The ability to look at multiple visualizations has its own benefits. You can filter the data using some criteria and all visualizations will show the data filtered by the same criteria. This ability lets you uncover some powerful insights. It can also answer more complex questions.

Let us build a dashboard from the visualizations that we have created so far. Please click on the Dashboard tab from the left-hand-side navigation bar in Kibana. Click on the + Create new dashboard button to create a new dashboard.

Click on the **Add** link to add visualizations to your newly created dashboard. As you click, you will see all the visualizations we have built in a dropdown selection. You can add all the visualizations one by one and drag/resize to create a dashboard that suits your requirements.

Let us see what a dashboard may look like for the application that we are building:

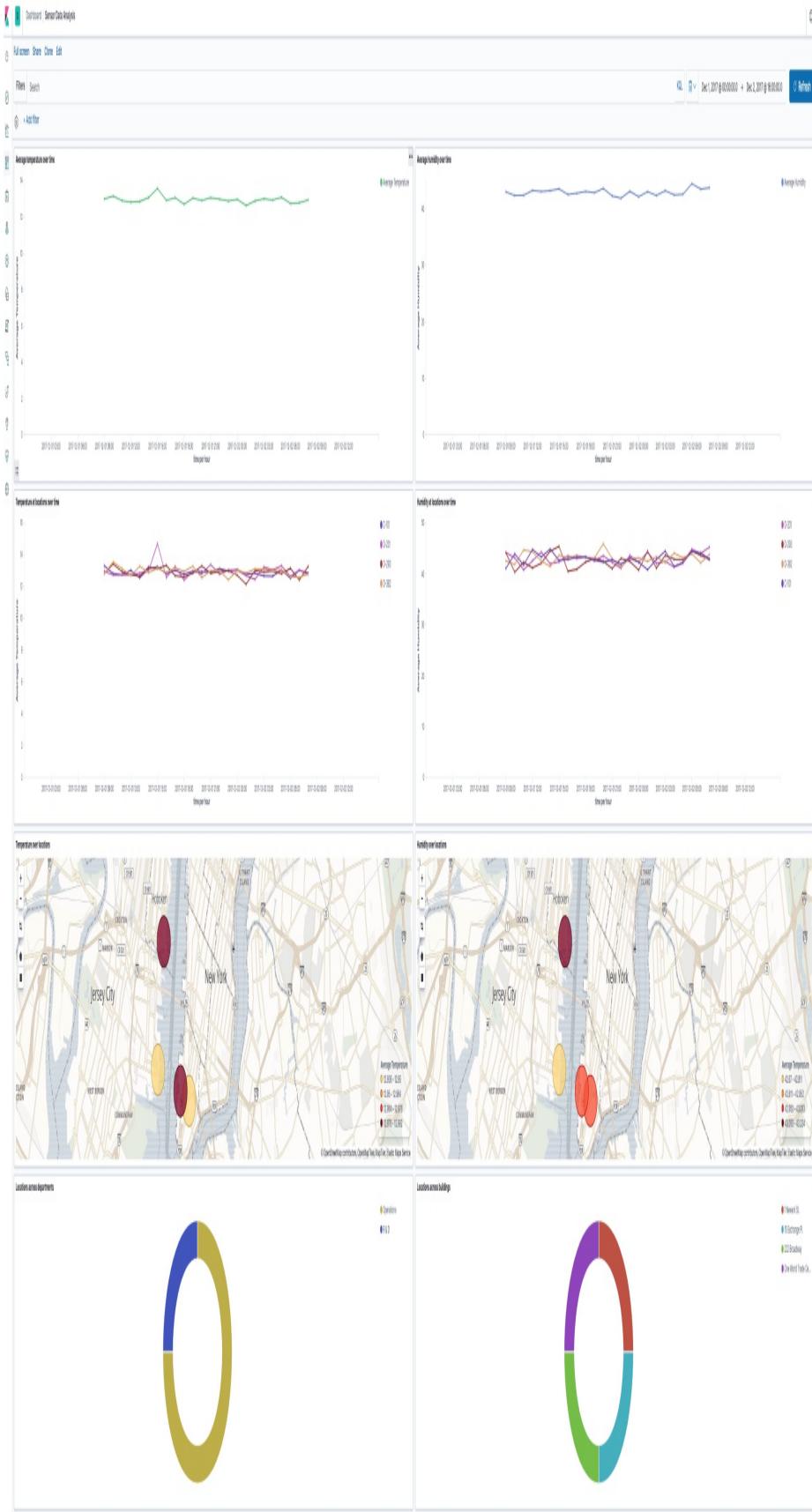


Figure 10.10: Dashboard for sensor data analytics application

With the dashboard, you can add filters by clicking on the **Add filter** link near the top-left corner of the dashboard. The selected filter will be applied to all the charts.

The visualizations are interactive; for example, clicking on one of the pies of the donut charts will apply that filter globally. Let's see how this can be helpful.

When you click on the pie for 222 Broadway building in the donut chart at the bottom-right corner, you will see the filter for `buildingName: "222 Broadway"` added to the filters. This lets you see all of the data from the perspective of all the sensors in that building:

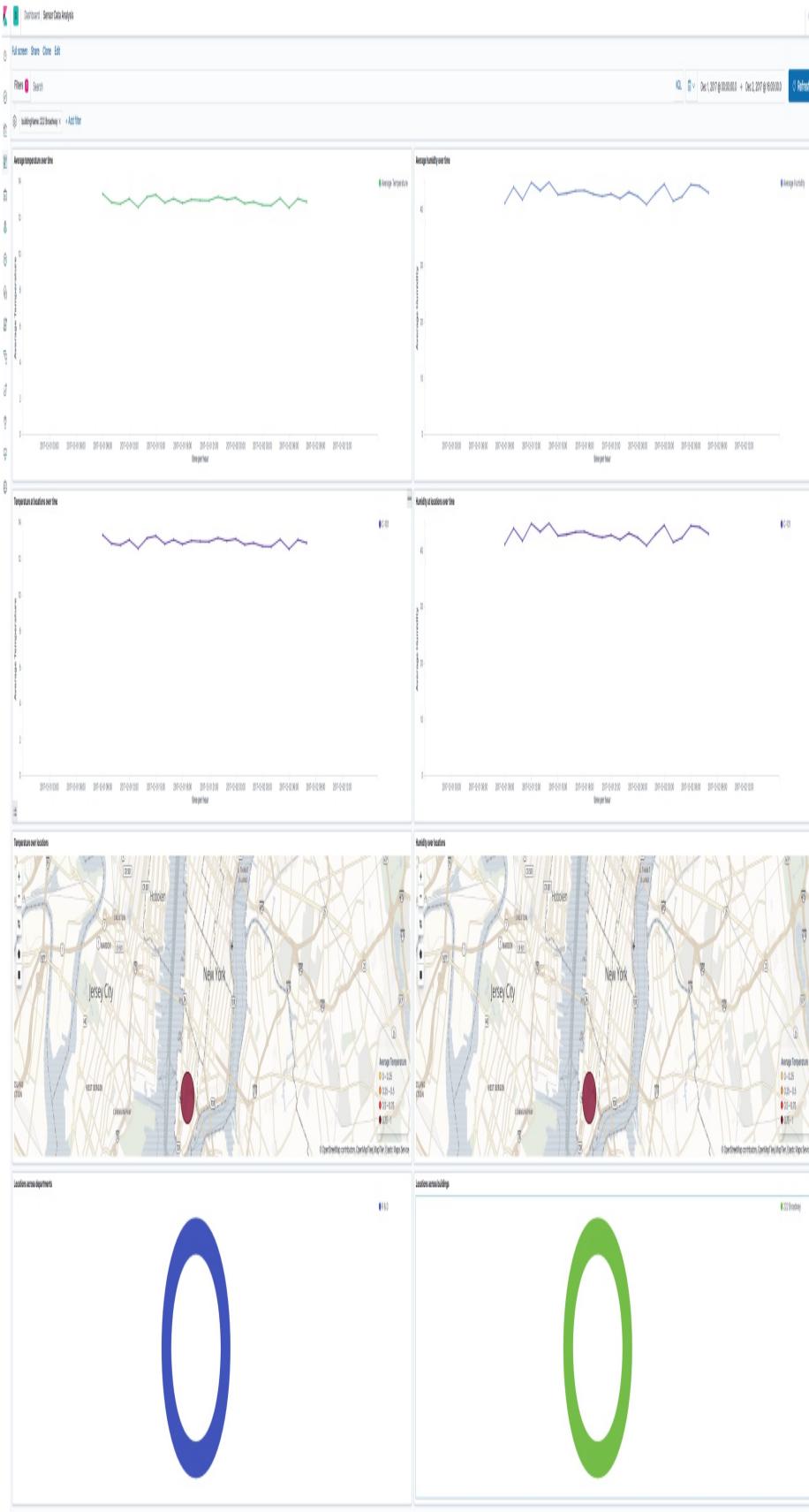


Figure 10.11: Interacting with the visualizations in a dashboard

Let us delete that filter by hovering over the **buildingName: "222 Broadway"** filter by clicking on the trash icon. Next, we will try to interact with one of the line charts, that is, the Temperature at locations over time visualization.

As we observed earlier, there was a spike on December 1, 2017 at 15:00 IST. It is possible to zoom in to a particular time period by clicking, dragging, and drawing a rectangle around the time interval that we want to zoom in to within any line chart. In other words, just draw a rectangle around the spike, dragging your mouse while it is clicked. The result is that the time filter applied on the entire dashboard (which is displayed in the top-right corner) is changed.

Let's see whether we get any new insights from this simple operation to focus on that time period:

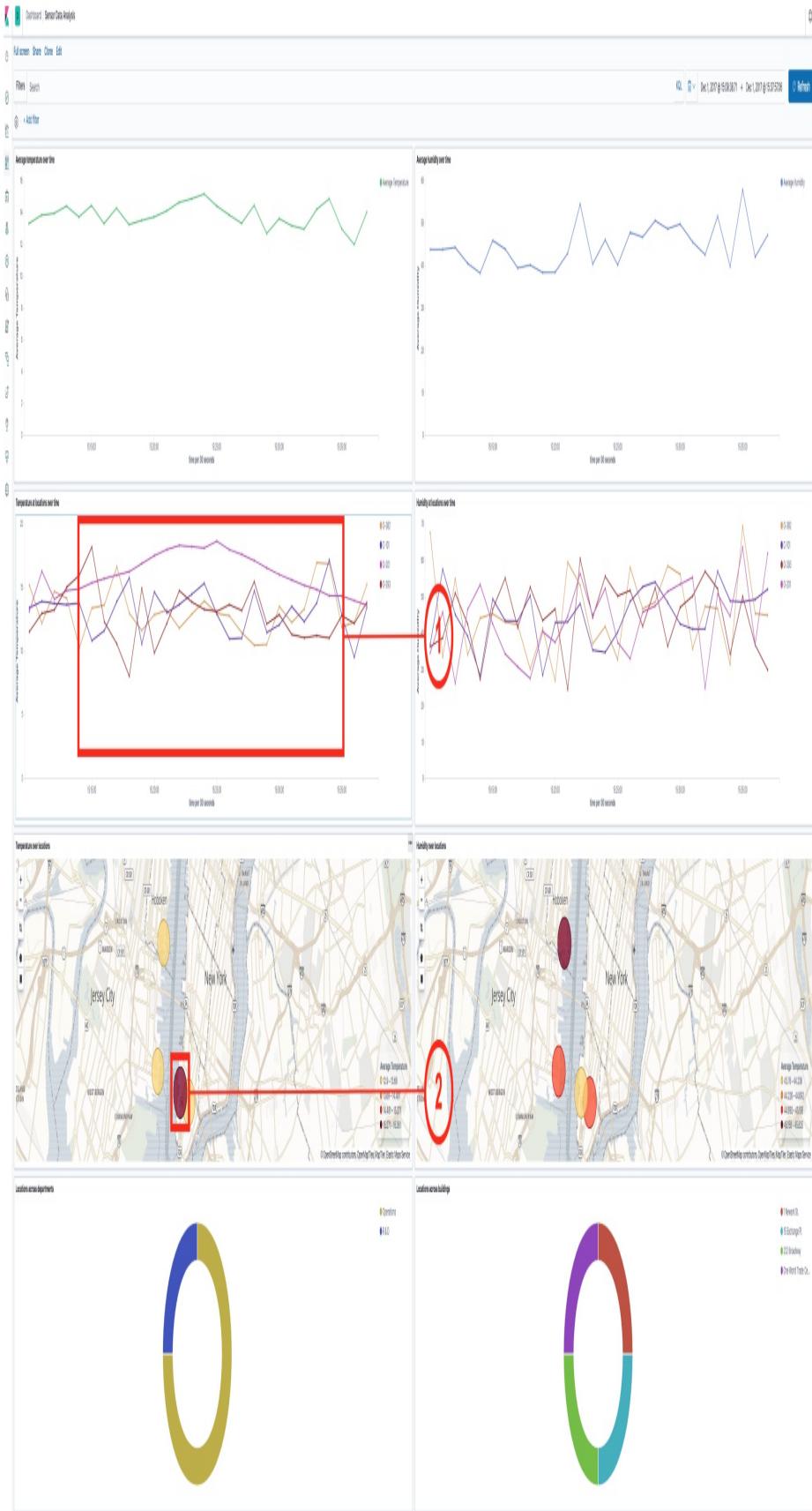


Figure 10.12: Zooming into a time interval from a line chart

We uncover the following facts:

1. The temperature sensor at location **O-201** (pink legend in fig-10.12) is steadily rising around this time.
2. In the **Coordinate Map** visualization, you can see that the highlighted circle is red, compared to the other locations, which are yellow. This highlights that the location has an abnormally high temperature compared to the other locations.

Interacting with charts and applying different filters can provide powerful insights like the ones we just saw.

This concludes our application and demonstration of what we can do using the Elastic Stack components.

Summary

In this chapter, we built a sensor data analytics application that has a wide variety of applications, as it is related to the emerging field of IoT. We understood the problem domain and the data model, including metadata related to sensors. We wanted to build an analytics application using only the components of the Elastic Stack, without using any other tools and programming languages, to obtain a powerful tool that can handle large volumes of data.

We started at the very core by designing the data model for Elasticsearch. Then, we designed a data pipeline that is secured and can accept data over the internet using HTTP. We enriched the incoming data using the metadata that we had in a relational database and stored in Elasticsearch. ...

Monitoring Server Infrastructure

In the previous chapter, we covered how to effectively run the Elastic Stack in a production environment, and the best practices to follow when running the Elastic Stack in production.

In this chapter, we will be covering how to use the Beats platform to monitor server infrastructure. We will learn about Metricbeat in detail, a Beat that helps IT administrators and application support teams monitor their applications and server infrastructure and respond to infrastructure outages in a timely manner.

In this chapter, we will cover the following topics:

- Metricbeat
- Configuring Metricbeat
- Capturing system metrics
- Deployment architecture

Metricbeat

Metricbeat is a lightweight shipper that periodically collects metrics from the operating system and from services running on the server. It helps you monitor servers by collecting metrics from the system and services such as Apache, MongoDB, Redis, and so on, that are running on the server.

Metricbeat can push collected metrics directly into Elasticsearch or send them to Logstash, Redis, or Kafka. To monitor services, Metricbeat can be installed on the edge server where services are running, but it also provides the ability to collect metrics from remote servers as well. However, it's recommended that you have it installed on the edge servers where the services are running.

Downloading and installing Metricbeat

Navigate to <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/beats/metricbeat-oss> and, depending on your operating system, download the ZIP/TAR file, as shown in the following screenshot. The installation of Metricbeat is simple and straightforward as follows:

The screenshot shows a web browser window with the URL <https://www.elastic.co/downloads/beats/metricbeat-oss> in the address bar. The page header includes the Elastic logo, navigation links for Products, Cloud, Services, Customers, Learn, and a language switcher (EN). Below the header, a "Downloads" section is visible. The main content area is titled "Download Metricbeat - OSS Only". It features a callout box with the text "Want to upgrade? We'll give you a hand. [Migration Guide »](#)". Below this, it displays the version information: "Version: 7.0.0" and "Release date: April 10, 2019". A "License: Apache 2.0" button is highlighted with a red border. Under "Downloads", there are links for various operating systems: DEB 32-BIT sha, DEB 64-BIT sha, RPM 32-BIT sha, RPM 64-BIT sha, LINUX 32-BIT sha, LINUX 64-BIT sha, MAC sha, WINDOWS 32-BIT sha, and WINDOWS 64-BIT sha. At the bottom, it says "Containers: Run with Docker" and "Run with Kubernetes". A note at the bottom states: "Notes: This distribution only includes features licensed under the Apache 2.0 license. To get access to full set of free features, use". A detailed note below explains compatibility: "For this tutorial, we'll use the Apache 2.0 version of Metricbeat. Beats version 7.0.x is compatible with Elasticsearch 6.7x and 7.0.x, and Logstash 6.7x and 7.0.x. The compatibility matrix can be found at https://www.elastic.co/support/matrix#matrix_compatibility. When you come across Elasticsearch and Logstash examples, or scenarios using Beats in this chapter, make sure that you have compatible versions of Elasticsearch and Logstash installed."

Installing on Windows

Unzip the downloaded file and navigate to the extracted location, as follows:

```
E:>cd E:\metricbeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64
```

To install Metricbeat as a service on Windows, perform the following steps:

1. Open Windows PowerShell as an administrator and navigate to the extracted location.
2. Run the following commands to install Metricbeat as a Windows service from the PowerShell prompt as follows:

```
PS >cd E:\metricbeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64PS >E:\metricbeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64>.\install-service-metricbeat.ps1
```

You need to set the execution policy for the current session to allow the script to run if script execution is disabled. For example, `PowerShell.exe -ExecutionPolicy Unrestricted -File .\install-service-metricbeat.ps1`.

Installing on Linux

Unzip the `.tar.gz` package and navigate to the newly created folder, as shown in the following code snippet:

```
$>tar -xzf metricbeat-7.0.0-linux-x86_64.tar.gz  
$>cd metricbeat
```

To install using `dep/rpm`, execute the appropriate commands in the Terminal as follows:

deb:

```
curl -L -O https://artifacts.elastic.co/downloads/beats/metricbeat/metricbeat-7.0.0-amd64.deb  
sudo dpkg -i metricbeat-7.0.0-amd64.deb
```

rpm:

```
curl -L -O https://artifacts.elastic.co/downloads/beats/metricbeat/metricbeat-7.0.0-x86_64.rpm  
sudo rpm -vi metricbeat-7.0.0-x86_64.rpm
```

Metricbeat will be installed in the `/usr/share/metricbeat` directory. The configuration files will be present in `/etc/metricbeat`. The `init` script will be present in `/etc/init.d/metricbeat`. The log files will be present within the `/var/log/metricbeat` directory.

Architecture

Metricbeat is made up of two components: one is called **modules** and the other is called **metricsets**. A Metricbeat module defines the basic logic of collecting data from a specific service, such as MongoDB, Apache, and so on. The module specifies details about the service, including how to connect, how often to collect metrics, and which metrics to collect.

Each module has one or more metricsets. A metricset is the component that collects a list of related metrics from services or the operating system using a single request. It structures event data and ships it to the configured outputs, such as Elasticsearch or Logstash.

Metricbeat collects metrics periodically, based on the interval specified in the `metricbeat.yml` configuration ...

Event structure

Metricbeat sends two types of event:

- Regular events containing the fetched metrics
- Error events when the service is down/unreachable

Irrespective of the type of event, all events have the same basic structure and contain the following fields as a minimum, irrespective of the type of module that's enabled:

- `@timestamp`: Time when the event was captured
- `host.hostname`: Hostname of the server on which Beat is running
- `host.os`: Operating system details of the server where Beat is running
- `agent.type`: Name given to Beat
- `agent.version`: The Beat version
- `event.module`: Name of the module that the data is from
- `event.dataset`: Name of the metricset that the data is from

In the case of error events, an error field such as `error.message`, containing the error message, code, and type, will be appended to the event.

An example of a regular event is as follows:

```
{"@timestamp": "2019-04-22T12:40:16.608Z",
"service": {
  "type": "system"
},
"system": {
  "uptime": {
    "duration": {
      "ms": 830231705
    }
  }
},
"event": {
  "module": "system",
  "duration": 221012700,
  "dataset": "system.uptime"
},
"metricset": {
  "name": "uptime"
},
"agent": {
  "type": "metricbeat",
  "ephemeral_id": "1956888d-7da0-469f-9a38-ab8b9ad52e07",
  "hostname": "madsh01-I21350",
```

```

    "id" : "5b28d885-1389-4e32-a3a9-3c5e8f9063b0",
    "version" : "7.0.0"
},
"ecs" : {
    "version" : "1.0.0"
},
"host" : {
    "name" : "madsh01-I21350",
    "os" : {
        "kernel" : "6.1.7601.24408 (win7sp1_ldr_escrow.190320-1700)",
        "build" : "7601.24411",
        "platform" : "windows",
        "version" : "6.1",
        "family" : "windows",
        "name" : "Windows 7 Enterprise"
    },
    "id" : "254667db-4667-46f9-8cf5-0d52ccf2beb9",
    "hostname" : "madsh01-I21350",
    "architecture" : "x86_64"
}
}

```

An example of an error event when `mongodb` is not reachable is as follows:

```

{
    "@timestamp": "2019-04-02T11:53:08.056Z",
    "metricset": {
        "host": "localhost:27017",
        "rtt": 1003057,
        "module": "mongodb",
        "name": "status"
    },
    "error": {
        "message": "no reachable servers"
    },
    "mongodb": {
        "status": {}
    }
}

```

Along with the minimum fields (the basic structure of the event) that Metricbeat ships with, it ships fields related to the modules that are enabled. The complete list of fields it ships with per module can be obtained at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/beats/metricbeat/current/exported-fields.html>.

Configuring Metricbeat

The configurations related to Metricbeat are stored in a configuration file named `metricbeat.yml`, which uses YAML syntax.

The `metricbeat.yml` file contains the following:

- Module configuration
- General settings
- Output configuration
- Processor configuration
- Path configuration
- Dashboard configuration
- Logging configuration

Let's explore some of these sections.

The location of the `metricbeat.yml` file will be present in the installation directory if `.zip` or `.tar` files are used for installation. If `.deb` or `.rpm` files are used for installation, then it will be present in the `/etc/metricbeat` location.

Module configuration

Metricbeat comes bundled with various modules to collect metrics from the system and applications, such as Apache, MongoDB, Redis, MySQL, and so on.

Metricbeat provides two ways of enabling modules and metricsets as follows:

- Enabling module configs in the `modules.d` directory
- Enabling module configs in the `metricbeat.yml` file

Enabling module configs in the modules.d directory

The `modules.d` directory contains default configurations for all the modules that are available in Metricbeat. The configuration that's specific to a module is stored in a `.yml` file, with the name of the file being the name of the module. For example, the configuration related to the MySQL module will be stored in the `mysql.yml` file. By default, except for the `system` module, all other modules are disabled. To list the modules that are available in Metricbeat, execute the following command:

```
Windows:E:\metricbeat-7.0.0-windows-x86_64>metricbeat.exe modules listLinux:  
[locationOfMetricBeat]$./metricbeat modules list
```

The `modules list` command displays all the available modules and also lists which ...

Enabling module configs in the metricbeat.yml file

If you're used to using earlier versions of Metricbeat, you can enable the appropriate modules and metricsets in the `metricbeat.yml` file directly by adding entries to the `metricbeat.modules` list. Each entry in the list begins with a dash (-) and is followed by the settings for that module. For example:

```
metricbeat.modules:  
#----- Memcached Module -----  
- module: memcached  
  metricsets: ["stats"]  
  period: 10s  
  hosts: ["localhost:11211"]  
  
#----- MongoDB Module -----  
- module: mongodb  
  metricsets: ["dbstats", "status"]  
  period: 5s
```

It is possible to specify a module multiple times and specify a different period one or more metricsets should be used for. For example:

```
#----- Couchbase Module -----  
- module: couchbase  
  metricsets: ["bucket"]  
  period: 15s  
  hosts: ["localhost:8091"]  
  
- module: couchbase  
  metricsets: ["cluster", "node"]  
  period: 30s  
  hosts: ["localhost:8091"]
```

General settings

This section contains configuration options and some general settings to control the behavior of Metricbeat.

Some of these configuration options/settings are as follows:

- `name`: The name of the shipper that publishes the network data. By default, the hostname is used for this field, as follows:

```
name: "dc1-host1"
```

- `tags`: A list of tags that will be included in the `tags` field of every event Metricbeat ships. Tags make it easy to group servers by different logical properties and are useful when filtering events in Kibana and Logstash, as follows:

```
tags: ["staging", "web-tier", "dc1"]
```

- `max_procs`: The maximum number of CPUs that can be executing simultaneously. The default is the number of logical CPUs available in the system:

Output configuration

This section is all about configuring outputs where the events need to be shipped. Events can be sent to single or multiple outputs simultaneously. The allowed outputs are Elasticsearch, Logstash, Kafka, Redis, file, and console. Some outputs that can be configured are as follows:

- `elasticsearch`: This is used to send events directly to Elasticsearch. A sample Elasticsearch output configuration is shown in the following code snippet:

```
output.elasticsearch:  
  enabled: true  
  hosts: ["localhost:9200"]
```

Using the `enabled` setting, you can enable or disable the output. `hosts` accepts one or more Elasticsearch node/servers. Multiple hosts can be defined for failover purposes. When multiple hosts are configured, the events are distributed to these nodes in a round-robin order. If Elasticsearch is secure, then credentials can be passed using the `username` and `password` settings, as follows:

```
output.elasticsearch:  
  enabled: true  
  hosts: ["localhost:9200"]  
  username: "elasticuser"  
  password: "password"
```

To ship events to the Elasticsearch ingest node pipeline so that they can be preprocessed before being stored in Elasticsearch, pipeline information can be provided using the `pipeline` setting, as follows:

```
output.elasticsearch:  
  enabled: true  
  hosts: ["localhost:9200"]  
  pipeline: "ngnix_log_pipeline"
```

The default index the data gets written to is in the `metricbeat-%{[beat.version]}-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}` format. This will create a new index every day. For example, if today is April 02, 2019, then all the events are placed in the `metricbeat-7.0.0-2019-04-02` index. You can override the index name or the pattern using the `index` setting. In the following configuration snippet, a new index is created for every month, as follows:

```
output.elasticsearch:  
  hosts: ["http://localhost:9200"]
```

```
index: "metricbeat-%{[beat.version]}-%{+yyyy.MM}"
```

Using the `indices` setting, you can conditionally place the events in the appropriate index that matches the specified condition. In the following code snippet, if the message contains the `DEBUG` string, it will be placed in the `debug-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}` index. If the message contains the `ERR` string, it will be placed in the `error-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}` index. If the message contains neither of these strings, then those events will be pushed to the `logs-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}` index, as specified in the `index` parameter, as follows:

```
output.elasticsearch:  
  hosts: ["http://localhost:9200"]  
  index: "logs-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}"  
  indices:  
    - index: "debug-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}"  
      when.contains:  
        message: "DEBUG"  
    - index: "error-%{+yyyy.MM.dd}"  
      when.contains:  
        message: "ERR"
```

When the `index` parameter is overridden, disable templates and dashboards by adding the following settings:

```
setup.dashboards.enabled: false  
setup.template.enabled: false
```

Alternatively, provide the values for `setup.template.name` and `setup.template.pattern` in the `metricbeat.yml` configuration file; otherwise, Metricbeat will fail to run.

- `logstash`: This is used to send events to Logstash.

To use Logstash as output, Logstash needs to be configured with the Beats input plugin so it can receive incoming Beats events.

A sample Logstash output configuration is as follows:

```
output.logstash:  
  enabled: true  
  hosts: ["localhost:5044"]
```

Using the `enabled` setting, you can enable or disable the output. `hosts` accepts one or more Logstash servers. Multiple hosts can be defined for failover purposes. If the configured host is unresponsive, then the event will be sent to one of the other configured hosts. When multiple hosts are configured, events are distributed in a random order. To enable load-balancing events across the Logstash hosts, use the `loadbalance` flag, set to `true`, as follows:

```
output.logstash:  
  hosts: ["localhost:5045", "localhost:5046"]  
  loadbalance: true
```

- `console`: This is used to send events to `stdout`. These events are written in JSON format. This is useful during debugging or testing.

A sample console configuration is as follows:

```
output.console:  
  enabled: true  
  pretty: true
```

Logging

This section contains the options for configuring the Metricbeat logging output. The logging system can write logs to syslog or rotate log files. If logging is not explicitly configured, file output is used on Windows systems, and syslog output is used on Linux and OS X.

A sample configuration is as follows:

```
logging.level: debug
logging.to_files: true
logging.files:
  path: C:\logs\metricbeat
  name: metricbeat.log
  keepfiles: 10
```

Some of the available configuration options are as follows:

- `level`: To specify the logging level.
- `to_files`: To write all logging output to files. The files are subject to file rotation. This is the default value.
- `to_syslog`: To write logging output to syslogs if this setting is set to `true`.
- `files.path, files.name ...`

Capturing system metrics

In order to monitor and capture metrics related to servers, Metricbeat provides the `system` module. The `system` module provides the following metricsets to capture server metrics, as follows:

- `core`: This metricset provides usage statistics for each CPU core.
- `cpu`: This metricset provides CPU statistics.
- `diskio`: This metricset provides disk IO metrics collected from the operating system. One event is created for each disk mounted on the system.
- `filesystem`: This metricset provides filesystem statistics. For each file system, one event is created.
- `process`: This metricset provides process statistics. One event is created for each process.
- `process_summary`: This metricset collects high-level statistics about the running processes.
- `fsstat`: This metricset provides overall filesystem statistics.
- `load`: This metricset provides load statistics.
- `memory`: This metricset provides memory statistics.
- `network`: This metricset provides network IO metrics collected from the operating system. One event is created for each network interface.
- `socket`: This metricset reports an event for each new TCP socket that it sees. This metricset is available on Linux only and requires kernel 2.6.14 or newer.

Some of these metricsets provide configuration options for fine-tuning returned metrics. For example, the `cpu` metricset provides a `cpu.metrics` configuration to control the CPU metrics that are reported. However, metricsets such as `memory` and `diskio` don't provide any configuration options. Unlike other modules, which can be monitored from other servers by configuring the hosts appropriately (not a highly recommended approach), `system` modules are local to the server and can collect the metrics of underlying hosts.

A complete list of fields per metricset that are exported by the `system` module can be found at <https://www.elastic.co/guide/en/beats/metricbeat/current/exported-fields-system.html>.

Running Metricbeat with the system module

Let's make use of Metricbeat and capture system metrics.

Make sure that Kibana 7.0 and Elasticsearch 7.0 are running:

1. Replace the content of `metricbeat.yml` with the following configuration and save the file:

```
#####
# Metricbeat Configuration Example #####
# Modules configuration =====
metricbeat.config.modules: # Glob
pattern for configuration loading path: ${path.config}/modules.d/*.yml # Set to
true to enable config reloading reload.enabled: false # Period on which files
under path should be checked for changes #reload.period: 10s#
# Elasticsearch template setting =====
setup.template.settings:
index.number_of_shards: 1 index.codec: ...
```

Specifying aliases

Elasticsearch allows the user to create an alias—a virtual index name that can be used to refer to an index or multiple indices. The Elasticsearch index API aliases an index with a name. This enables all the APIs to automatically convert their alias names into the actual index name.

Say, for example, that we want to query against a set of similar indexes. Rather than specifying each of the index names in the query, we can make use of aliases and execute the query against the alias. The alias will internally point to all the indexes and perform a query against them. This will be highly beneficial if we added certain indexes dynamically on a regular basis, so that one application/user performing the query need not worry about including those indexes in the query as long as the index is updated with the alias (which can be done manually by an admin or specified during index creation).

Let's say the IT admin creates an alias pointing to all the indexes containing the metrics for a specific month. For example, as shown in the following code snippet, an alias called `april_04_metrics` is created for all the indexes of the `metricbeat-7.0.0-2019.04.*` pattern, that is, those Metricbeats indexes that are created on a daily basis in the month of April 2019:

```
curl -X POST  http://localhost:9200/_aliases -H 'content-type: application/json' -d '
{
  "actions": [
    {
      "add": {
        "index" : "metricbeat-7.0.0-2019.04.*",
        "alias": "april_04_metrics"
      }
    }
}'
```

Now, using the `april_04_metrics` alias name, the query can be executed against all the indexes of the `metricbeat-7.0.0-2019.04.*` pattern as follows:

```
curl -X GET http://localhost:9200/april_04_metrics/_search
```

In the following example, the `sales` alias is created against the `it_sales` and `retail_sales` indexes. In the future, if a new sales index gets created, then that index can also point to the `sales` index so that the end user/application can always make use of the `sales` endpoint to query all sales data, as follows:

```
curl -X POST  http://localhost:9200/_aliases -d '{
  "actions": [
    {
      "add": {
        "index" : "it_sales",
        "alias": "sales"
      }
    },
    {
      "add": {
        "index" : "retail_sales",
        "alias": "sales"
      }
    }
  ]
}'
```

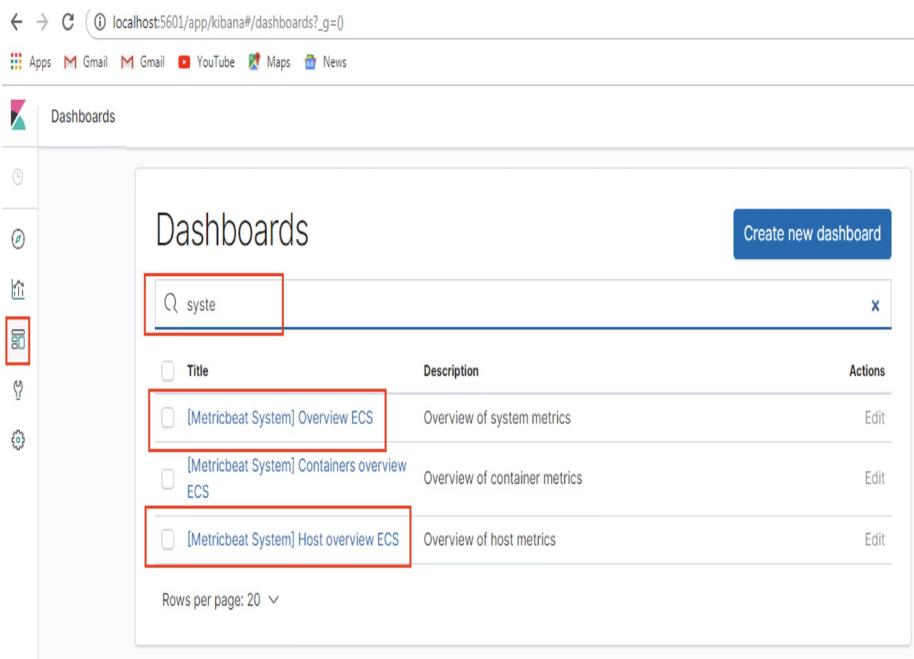
To remove an alias from an index, use the `remove` action of the aliases API, as follows:

```
curl -X POST  http://localhost:9200/_aliases -d '  
{"actions": [ {"remove": { "index": "retail_sales", "alias": "sales" }}] }'
```

Visualizing system metrics using Kibana

To visualize the system metrics using Kibana, execute the following steps:

1. Navigate to <http://localhost:5601> and open up Kibana.
2. Click on the Dashboard link found in the left navigation menu and select either [Metricbeat System] Overview ECS or [Metricbeat System] Host Overview ECS from the dashboard, as shown in the following screenshot:



The screenshot shows the Kibana interface with the URL [http://localhost:5601/app/kibana#/dashboards?_g=\(\)](http://localhost:5601/app/kibana#/dashboards?_g=()) in the address bar. The left sidebar has icons for Home, Dashboards, Visualize, Settings, and Help. The main area is titled "Dashboards". A search bar at the top has "syste" typed into it. A blue button "Create new dashboard" is on the right. Below the search bar is a table with three rows:

Title	Description	Actions
[Metricbeat System] Overview ECS	Overview of system metrics	Edit
[Metricbeat System] Containers overview ECS	Overview of container metrics	Edit
[Metricbeat System] Host overview ECS	Overview of host metrics	Edit

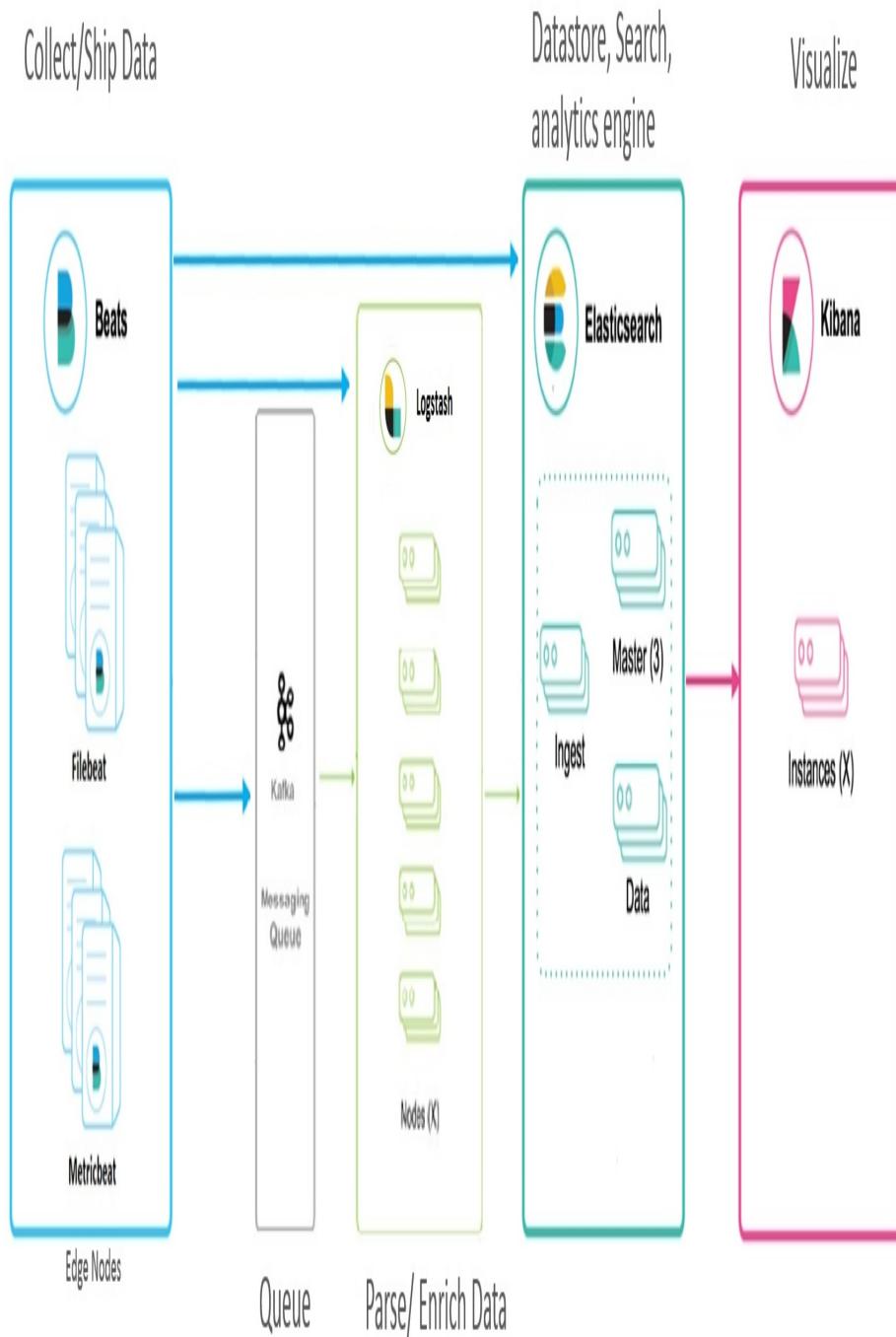
At the bottom of the table, there is a "Rows per page: 20" dropdown.

[Metricbeat System] Overview Dashboard ECS: This dashboard provides an overview of all the systems that are being monitored. Since we are monitoring only a single host, we see that the **Number of hosts** is 1, as shown in the following screenshot:

[Metricbeat Host] ...

Deployment architecture

The following diagram depicts the commonly used Elastic Stack deployment architecture:



This diagram depicts three possible architectures:

- **Ship the operation metrics directly to Elasticsearch:** As seen in the preceding diagram, you will install various types of **Beats**, such as **Metricbeat**, **Filebeat**, **Packetbeat**, and so on, on the edge servers from which you would like to ship the operation metrics/logs. If no further processing is required, then the generated events can be shipped directly to the Elasticsearch cluster. Once the data is present in Elasticsearch, it can then be visualized/analyzed using Kibana. In this architecture, the flow of events would be **Beats → Elasticsearch → Kibana**.
- **Ship the operation metrics to Logstash:** The operation metrics/logs that are captured by Beats and installed on edge servers is sent to Logstash for further processing, such as parsing the logs or enriching log events. Then, the parsed/enriched events are pushed to Elasticsearch. To increase the processing capacity, you can scale up Logstash instances, for example, by configuring a set of Beats to send data to Logstash instance 1 and configuring another set of Beats to send data to Logstash instance 2, and so on. In this architecture, the flow of events would be **Beats → Logstash → Elasticsearch → Kibana**.
- **Ship the operation metrics to a resilient queue:** If the generated events are at a very high rate and if Logstash is unable to cope with the load or to prevent loss of data/events when Logstash is down, you can go for resilient queues such as Apache Kafka so that events are queued. Then, Logstash can process them at its own speed, thus avoiding the loss of operation metrics/logs captured by Beats. In this architecture, the flow of events would be **Beats → Kafka → Logstash → Elasticsearch → Kibana**.

Starting with Logstash 5.x, you can make use of the persistent queue settings of Logstash and make use of it as queue, too. However, it doesn't offer a high degree of resilience like Kafka.

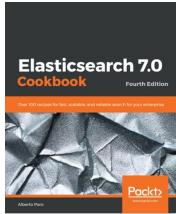
In the aforementioned architectures, you can easily scale up/scale down instances of Elasticsearch, Logstash, and Kibana based on the use case at hand.

Summary

In this chapter, we covered another Beat library called Metricbeat in detail. We covered how to install and configure Metricbeat so that it can send operational metrics to Elasticsearch. We also covered the various deployment architectures for building real-time monitoring solutions using Elasticsearch Stack in order to monitor servers and applications. This helps IT administrators and application support personnel gain insights into the behavior of applications and servers, and allows them to respond in a timely manner in the event of an infrastructure outage.

Other Books You May Enjoy

If you enjoyed this book, you may be interested in these other books by Packt:



Elasticsearch 7.0 Cookbook - Fourth Edition

Alberto Paro

ISBN: 9781789956504

- Create an efficient architecture with Elasticsearch
- Optimize search results by executing analytics aggregations
- Build complex queries by managing indices and documents
- Monitor the performance of your cluster and nodes
- Design advanced mapping to take full control of index steps
- Integrate Elasticsearch in Java, Scala, Python, and big data applications
- Install Kibana to monitor clusters and extend it for plugins



Machine Learning with the Elastic Stack

Bahaaldine Azarmi, Rich Collier

ISBN: 9781788477543

- Install the Elastic Stack to use machine learning features
- Understand how Elastic machine learning is used to detect a variety of anomaly types

- Apply effective anomaly detection to IT operations and security analytics
- Leverage the output of Elastic machine learning in custom views, dashboards, and proactive alerting
- Combine your created jobs to correlate anomalies of different layers of infrastructure
- Learn various tips and tricks to get the most out of Elastic machine learning

Leave a review - let other readers know what you think

Please share your thoughts on this book with others by leaving a review on the site that you bought it from. If you purchased the book from Amazon, please leave us an honest review on this book's Amazon page. This is vital so that other potential readers can see and use your unbiased opinion to make purchasing decisions, we can understand what our customers think about our products, and our authors can see your feedback on the title that they have worked with Packt to create. It will only take a few minutes of your time, but is valuable to other potential customers, our authors, and Packt. Thank you!